

FORD **TOURNEO COURIER /**
TRANSIT COURIER Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2025

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3971en-202507-20250924125424

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Publication	19
Using This Publication	21
Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication	21
Special Notices - Turkey	21

Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster	23
---	----

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	27
Service Data	28
Event Data	28
Settings Data	29
Connected Vehicle Data	29
Mobile Device Data	29
Emergency Call System Data	30

Environment

Protecting the Environment	31
Recycling and Disposing Labels	31
Recycling and Disposing of Batteries	31

Visual Search

Interior Overview - Diesel/Gasoline, LHD	32
Interior Overview - Diesel/Gasoline, RHD	33
Interior Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, LHD	34
Interior Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, RHD	36
Exterior Overview - Diesel/Gasoline	37
Exterior Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle	38

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions	40
--------------------------------	----

Child Restraint Anchor Points	41
Child Restraints	44
Booster Seats	51
Child Safety Locks	52

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions - Vehicles Without: Rear Center Seat Head Restraint	53
Seatbelt Precautions - Vehicles With: Rear Center Seat Head Restraint	53
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts - Vehicles Without: Rear Center Seat Head Restraint	53
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts - Vehicles With: Rear Center Seat Head Restraint	54
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	55
Seatbelt Reminder	56
Seatbelts - Troubleshooting	57

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	58
How Do the Side Airbags Work	58
How Does the Center Mounted Side Airbag Work	59
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work	59
Airbag Precautions	59
Passenger Airbag Indicators	60
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off	61
Airbags - Troubleshooting	61

Pedestrian Alert System

What Is the Pedestrian Alert System	62
Pedestrian Alert System - Troubleshooting	62

eCall

What Is eCall	63
---------------------	----

Table of Contents

How Does eCall Work	63
Emergency Call Requirements	63
Emergency Call Limitations	63
Manually Making an Emergency Call	63
Emergency Call Indicators	64
Changing the Backup Battery	65
eCall – Troubleshooting	65

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	66
Opening and Closing the Flip Key - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition	66
Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	66
Locating Your Vehicle	67
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition	67
Changing the Remote Control Battery - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	68
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	69
Programming the Remote Control	69
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting	70

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	72
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	74
Reprogramming the Unlocking Function	74
Autounlock	75
Mislock	75
Autorelock	76
Door Lock Indicators	76
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings	76
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting	76

Sliding Door

Sliding Door Precautions	78
Opening the Sliding Door	78
Closing the Sliding Door	79

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	80
Keyless Entry Limitations	80
Keyless Entry Settings	80
Using Keyless Entry	80
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting	81

Liftgate

Liftgate Precautions	83
Opening the Liftgate	83
Closing the Liftgate	84
Liftgate – Troubleshooting	84

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	85
Anti-Theft Alarm System	85
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings	86
Security – Troubleshooting	87

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	89
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition	89
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	90
Heated Steering Wheel	90

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	91
Autowipers	92
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off - Diesel/Gasoline	94
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off - Battery Electric Vehicle	94
Reverse Wipe	94

Table of Contents

Checking the Wiper Blades	94
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	94
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades	95
Washers	95
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	98

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control - Vehicles Built From: 08/2026	99
Exterior Lighting Control - Vehicles Built Up To: 08/2026	99
Headlamps	100
Exterior Lamps	101
Automatic High Beam Control	103
Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions	105

Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Vehicles With: Front Interior Lamp	107
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Vehicles With: Front Interior Lamp With Map Reading Lamps	107
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	107
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off	107
Interior Lamp Function	108
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	108

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open Driver Window	109
Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Front Windows	109
Global Opening and Closing	110
Window Bounce-Back	111
Locking the Rear Window Controls	112

Opening and Closing the Rear Windows	112
--	-----

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions	113
Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror	113
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	113

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	114
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors	114
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles With: Manual Fold Exterior Mirrors	115

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview - Diesel/Gasoline	116
Instrument Cluster Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle	117
Tachometer - Diesel/Gasoline	117
Power Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle	118
Speedometer	118
Fuel Gauge - Diesel/Gasoline	118
Vehicle Range Display - Battery Electric Vehicle	118
High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle	119
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge - Diesel/Gasoline	119
Electric Motor Temperature Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle	119
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	119
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators	119

Instrument Cluster Display

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls	120
---	-----

Table of Contents

Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Diesel/Gasoline	120
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Battery Electric Vehicle	121
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Diesel/Gasoline	121
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display - Battery Electric Vehicle	122
Fuel Economy Display - Diesel/Gasoline	122
Electric Economy - Battery Electric Vehicle	122
Battery Charge - Battery Electric Vehicle	123
Brake Coach - Battery Electric Vehicle	123
Trip Summary - Battery Electric Vehicle	123
Vehicle Charging Status - Battery Electric Vehicle	123

Personalized Settings

Changing the Language	124
Changing the Measurement Unit	124
Changing the Temperature Unit	124
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit	124

Trip Computer - Diesel/Gasoline

Accessing the Trip Computer	125
Resetting the Trip Computer	125
Trip Data	125

Trip Computer - Battery Electric Vehicle

Accessing the Trip Computer	126
Resetting the Trip Computer	126
Resetting the Individual Trip Values	126
Configuring the Trip Computer	126
Trip Data	126

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

Using Remote Start - Diesel/Gasoline	128
Using Remote Start - Battery Electric Vehicle	128
Enabling Remote Start	129
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles Without: Heated Steering Wheel	129
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With: Heated Steering Wheel	130

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

Switching Climate Control On and Off	131
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	131
Switching Defrost On and Off	131
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	131
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	131
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	131
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	132
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	132
Setting the Temperature	132
Directing the Flow of Air	132
Climate Control Hints	132

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	134
--	-----

Table of Contents

Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	134
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	134
Switching Defrost On and Off	134
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	134
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	135
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	135
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	135
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	135
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	135
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	135
Setting the Temperature	136
Directing the Flow of Air	136
Auto Mode	136
Climate Control Hints	137

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Manual Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	139
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	139
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	139
Switching Defrost On and Off	139
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	139
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	140
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	140
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	140

Setting the Blower Motor Speed	140
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	140
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	140
Setting the Temperature	141
Directing the Flow of Air	141
Climate Control Hints	141

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control

Switching Climate Control On and Off	143
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	143
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	143
Switching Defrost On and Off	143
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	143
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	144
Switching the Electric Heater On and Off - Battery Electric Vehicle	144
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off	144
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off - Vehicles Built From: 12/2024	144
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	144
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window	145
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window	145
Setting the Temperature	145
Directing the Flow of Air	145
Auto Mode	145

Table of Contents

Climate Control Hints - Battery Electric Vehicle	146
--	-----

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter	148
Locating the Cabin Air Filter	148
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter	148

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	149
Sitting in the Correct Position	149
Manual Seats	150
Heated Seats	154

Rear Seats - Kombi

Rear Seat Precautions	156
Manual Seats	156

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	159
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	159
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	159
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	159
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings	160
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	160
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	161

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	162
Playing Media Using the USB Port	162
Charging a Device	162

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	164
Power Outlet Precautions	164
Power Outlet Limitations	164
Locating the Power Outlets	164
Power Outlet Indicators	164

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	166
Power Outlet Precautions	166
Locating the Power Outlets	166

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger	167
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions	167
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	167
Charging a Wireless Device	168
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting	168

Storage

Bottle Holders	169
Cup Holders	169
Overhead Storage	170

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions	171
Ignition Switch - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition	171
Push Button Ignition Switch - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	172
Starting the Engine	172
Stopping the Engine	175

Table of Contents

Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	178
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position - Vehicles With: Push Button Start	178
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting	179

Starting and Powering Off

Starting and Powering Off Precautions	184
Starting the Vehicle	184
Powering Off	184
Restarting the Vehicle After Powering Off	184
Vehicle Power Down Timer	185
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	185
Starting and Powering Off – Troubleshooting	186

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	187
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	187
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	187
Stopping the Engine	187
Restarting the Engine	187
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	188
Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning	188
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	188

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	190
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	190
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	190
Stopping the Engine	190
Restarting the Engine	190

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	191
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	191

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/ Gasoline

Fuel and Refueling Precautions	193
Fuel Quality	194
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel	194
Running Out of Fuel	194
Refueling	196
Fuel Tank Capacity - Gasoline	197
Fuel Tank Capacity - Diesel	198
Fuel Consumption Regulations	199
Fuel Consumption Figures - Gasoline	199
Fuel Consumption Figures - Diesel	200
Fuel and Refueling Audible Warnings	201
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting	201

Diesel Particulate Filter

What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter	202
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work	202
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions	202
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements	203
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	203

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System	205
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions	205
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements	205

Table of Contents

Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines	205
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank	206
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level	208
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status	208
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption	208
AdBlue® Capacity and Specification	208
Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Troubleshooting	209

Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter	212
Catalytic Converter Precautions	212
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting	212

Gasoline Particulate Filter

What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter	213
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work	213
Gasoline Particulate Filter Precautions	213
Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements	213
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting	214

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle

What Is the High Voltage Battery	215
High Voltage Battery Precautions	215
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery	215
Recycling and Disposing of the High Voltage Battery	216
Energy Consumption Regulations	216
Energy Consumption Figures	217

High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting	217
--	-----

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Charging Equipment Precautions	218
Charging Equipment Overview	219
Charging Equipment Indicators	222
Locating the Charge Port	225
Charge Port Indicators	226
AC Charging	227
DC Charging	234
Charge Coupler Manual Release - M1 Kombi/N1 Kombi	237
Charge Coupler Manual Release - N1 Kombi Van/Van	238
Charging Settings	238
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging	242
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols	242
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting	244

Manual Transmission

Manual Transmission Precautions	246
Shifting Into Reverse	246
Manual Transmission Shift Indicators	246
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level	246
Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification	246
Clutch Fluid Capacity and Specification	247
Manual Transmission – Troubleshooting	247

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions	248
Automatic Transmission Positions	248

Table of Contents

Automatic Transmission Position Indicators	249
Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators	249
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P)	250
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings	250
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification - Diesel/Gasoline	251
Automatic Transmission – Troubleshooting	252

Electric Motor

Electric Motor Precautions	253
Selector Positions	253
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear	254
Selector Position Indicators	254
Electric Motor Audible Warnings	255
Roll-Away Protection	255
Electric Motor – Troubleshooting	257

Drive Mode Control

What Is Drive Mode Control	259
Selecting a Drive Mode	259
Drive Modes	259
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting	259

One Pedal Drive

What is One Pedal Drive	260
One Pedal Drive Precautions	260
One Pedal Drive Limitations	260
Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off	260
One Pedal Drive Indicators	260

Brakes

Brake Precautions	261
Anti-Lock Braking System	261

Brake Over Accelerator - Diesel/Gasoline	261
Brake Over Accelerator - Battery Electric Vehicle	261
Checking the Brake Fluid	261
Brake Fluid Specification	262
Brakes – Troubleshooting	263

Parking Brake - Diesel/Gasoline, Automatic Transmission

Applying the Parking Brake	265
Releasing the Parking Brake	265
Parking Brake Audible Warning	265
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	265

Parking Brake - Manual Transmission

Applying the Parking Brake	266
Releasing the Parking Brake	266
Parking Brake Audible Warning	266
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	266

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

What Is the Electric Parking Brake	267
Applying the Electric Parking Brake	267
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	267
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	268
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	268
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	268
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	268

Reverse Brake Assist

What Is Reverse Brake Assist	271
------------------------------------	-----

Table of Contents

How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work	271
Reverse Brake Assist Precautions	271
Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off	272
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist	272
Reverse Brake Assist Indicators	272
Reverse Brake Assist – Troubleshooting	273

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	275
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	275
Hill Start Assist Precautions	275
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off	275
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting	275

Auto Hold

How Does Auto Hold Work	276
Switching Auto Hold On and Off	276
Using Auto Hold	276
Auto Hold Indicators	276

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	277
How Does Traction Control Work	277
Switching Traction Control On and Off	277
Traction Control Indicator	277
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	277

Stability Control

What Is Stability Control	278
How Does Stability Control Work	278
Switching Stability Control On and Off	278
Stability Control Indicator	278

Steering

Electric Power Steering	279
-------------------------------	-----

Steering – Troubleshooting	280
----------------------------------	-----

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions	282
Switching Parking Aid On and Off	282
Rear Parking Aid	283
Front Parking Aid	283
Parking Aid Indicators	285
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	285

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera	287
Rear View Camera Precautions	287
Rear View Camera Limitations	287
Locating the Rear View Camera	287
Rear View Camera Guide Lines	288
Rear View Camera Settings	289

180 Degree Camera

What Is the 180 Degree Camera	291
How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work	291
180 Degree Camera Precautions	291
Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off	291

Cruise Control

What Is Cruise Control	292
Switching Cruise Control On and Off	292
Setting the Cruise Control Speed	292
Canceling the Set Speed	293
Resuming the Set Speed	293
Cruise Control Indicators	293

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work	294
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work	294

Table of Contents

Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions – Diesel/Gasoline	294
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions – Battery Electric Vehicle	295
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	296
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	298
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	298
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	299
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	299
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	299
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	300
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	301
Canceling the Set Speed	302
Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	302
Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go	302
Overriding the Set Speed	304
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	304
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	304
Lane Centering	304
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting	307
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control	309
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	310
Local Hazard Information	
What Is Local Hazard Information	312
Local Hazard Information Precautions	312
Local Hazard Information Indicators	312
Enabling Local Hazard Information	312
Checking Local Hazard Information Status	312
Speed Limiter	
How Does the Speed Limiter Work	313
Speed Limiter Precautions	313
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off	313
Setting the Speed Limit	313
Changing the Set Speed Limit	313
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	313
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	313
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	314
Speed Limiter Indicators	314
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	314
Intelligent Speed Limiter	
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter	315
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work	315
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions	315
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off	315
Setting the Speed Limit	316
Changing the Set Speed Limit	316
Canceling the Set Speed Limit	316
Resuming the Set Speed Limit	316
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit	316

Table of Contents

Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators	316
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings	317
Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter	317
Intelligent Speed Limiter – Troubleshooting	317

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System	318
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	318
Lane Keeping System Precautions	318
Lane Keeping System Limitations	318
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	319
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	319
Lane Keeping System Settings	319
Aid Mode	319
Alert and Aid Mode	320
Lane Keeping System Indicators	320
Blind Spot Assist	321
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	323
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	326

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System	327
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	327
Blind Spot Information System Precautions	327
Blind Spot Information System Limitations - Diesel/Gasoline	327
Blind Spot Information System Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle	328

Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Diesel/Gasoline, Manual Transmission	328
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Diesel/Gasoline, Automatic Transmission	328
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Battery Electric Vehicle	328
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	329
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors	329
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage	329
Blind Spot Information System Indicators	331
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	331

Exit Warning

How Does Exit Warning Work	332
Exit Warning Precautions	332
Exit Warning Limitations	332
Exit Warning Indicators	333
Switching Exit Warning On and Off	333
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors	333
Exit Warning – Troubleshooting	333

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert	334
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	334
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	335
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	336
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	336
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors	336
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	337
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	337

Table of Contents

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist	339
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	339
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work	339
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	340
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	340
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control	340
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control	341
Distance Indication - Diesel/Gasoline	341
Forward Collision Warning	342
Automatic Emergency Braking	342
Evasive Steering Assist	343
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	343

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert	345
How Does Driver Alert Work - Diesel/Gasoline	345
How Does Driver Alert Work - Battery Electric Vehicle	345
Driver Alert Precautions	346
Switching Driver Alert On and Off	347
Driver Alert Indicators	347
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	347

Traffic Sign Recognition

What Is Traffic Sign Recognition	348
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work	348
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions	348
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations	348
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators	349

Traffic Sign Recognition Settings	350
---	-----

Wrong Way Alert

What Is Wrong Way Alert	351
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work	351
Wrong Way Alert Precautions	351
Wrong Way Alert Limitations	351
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off	351
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting	352

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	353
Rear Loadspace Hatch	353
Roof Rack	353
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier	354

Luggage Compartment

Luggage Compartment Precautions	356
Opening the Frunk - Battery Electric Vehicle	356
Closing the Frunk - Battery Electric Vehicle	356
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net - Bus	357
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover - Bus	357

Rear Cargo Area - Van

Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points	358
Installing and Removing the Bulkhead	359

Connecting a Trailer

Connecting a Trailer	361
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting	362

Table of Contents

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles Without: Fixed Tow Ball

Towing a Trailer Precautions	363
------------------------------------	-----

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Fixed Tow Ball

Towing a Trailer Precautions	364
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Diesel/ Gasoline	364
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle	364
Loading Your Trailer	365
Trailer Towing Hints	365
Towing Weights and Dimensions	365

Driving Hints

Cold Weather Precautions	368
Driving on Snow and Ice	368
Breaking-In - Diesel/Gasoline	368
Breaking-In - Battery Electric Vehicle	368
Driving Economically - Diesel/Gasoline	368
Driving Through Shallow Water - Diesel/ Gasoline	369
Driving Through Shallow Water - Battery Electric Vehicle	369
Electric Vehicle	370
Floor Mats	370

Crash and Breakdown Information

High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Battery Electric Vehicle	372
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	373
Jump Starting the Vehicle	373
Post-Crash Alert System	376
Post-Collision Braking	376
Automatic Crash Shutoff	377
Recovery Towing	377

Transporting the Vehicle	379
Fail-Safe Cooling	380

Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	382
Emergency Towing	382

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	383
Emergency Towing	383

Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	384
Emergency Towing	384

Emergency Equipment

Storing a First Aid Kit - Diesel/Gasoline	385
Storing a First Aid Kit - Battery Electric Vehicle	385
Storing a Warning Triangle - Diesel/ Gasoline	385
Storing a Warning Triangle - Battery Electric Vehicle	385

Fuses

Fuse Precautions	386
Under Hood Fuse Box	386
Body Control Module Fuse Box	398
High Current Fuse Box	402
Identifying Fuse Types	403
Fuses – Troubleshooting	403

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions	404
Opening and Closing the Hood	404
Under Hood Overview - Gasoline, LHD	405

Table of Contents

Under Hood Overview - Gasoline, RHD	406
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, LHD	407
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, RHD	408
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, LHD	409
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, RHD	410
Engine Oil	411
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline	413
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel	414
Coolant - Diesel/Gasoline	414
Coolant - Battery Electric Vehicle	418
12V Battery	422
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Diesel/Gasoline	425
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Battery Electric Vehicle	427
Adjusting the Headlamps	428
Exterior Bulbs	429
Interior Bulbs	433
Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check - Diesel	435
Vehicle Specifications	
Engine Specifications - Gasoline	436
Engine Specifications - Diesel	437
Vehicle Dimensions - Tourneo	438
Vehicle Dimensions - Transit	439
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Gasoline	440
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Diesel	441
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification - Battery Electric Vehicle	442
Vehicle Care	
Cleaning the Exterior	443
Cleaning the Interior	445
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	447
Waxing Your Vehicle	447
Storing Your Vehicle	
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Diesel/Gasoline	448
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle	449
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Diesel/Gasoline	450
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle	450
Wheel and Tire Information	
Locating the Tire label	451
Information on the Tire Sidewall	451
Glossary of Tire Terminology	454
Tire Replacement Requirements	455
Using Summer Tires	456
Using Winter Tires	456
Using Snow Chains - Diesel/Gasoline	456
Using Snow Chains - Battery Electric Vehicle	457
Tire Care	
Checking the Tire Pressures	458
Inflating the Tires	458
Tire Pressure Specifications - Diesel/Gasoline	458
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle	460
Inspecting the Tire for Damage	461
Tire Rotation	461
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	463
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions	463
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	463

Table of Contents

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components	463
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit	464

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	467
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	467
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	467
Viewing the Tire Pressures	467
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Diesel/Gasoline	467
Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring System - Battery Electric Vehicle	468
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting	468

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire	471
Wheel Nuts	476

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number	477
Vehicle Identification Plate	477

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle - Diesel/Gasoline	479
What Is a Connected Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle	479
Connected Vehicle Requirements	479
Connected Vehicle Limitations	479
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	479
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	480
Connected Vehicle Settings	480
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting	480

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	482
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password	482
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting	483

Audio System

Audio System Precautions	484
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	484
Selecting the Audio Source	484
Media Control Buttons	484
Adjusting the Volume	484
Setting a Memory Preset	485
Muting the Audio	485
Scrolling Through Menu Items	485
Selecting a Menu Item	485
Adjusting the Sound Settings	485
Setting the Clock and Date	485
FM Radio	485
Switching the Display On and Off	486
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	486

Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions	488
Center Display Limitations	488
Status Bar	488
Feature Bar - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen	489
Information On Demand Screen	489
Rebooting the Center Display	489

Voice Interaction

What is Voice Interaction	490
Setting the Wake Word	490
Beginning a Voice Interaction	490
Voice Interaction Examples	490

Table of Contents

Alexa Built-In

What is Alexa Built-In	491
Alexa Built-In Requirements	491
Signing In to Your Account	491
Using Alexa Built-In	491
Alexa Built-In Settings	491

Phone

Phone Precautions	493
Connecting Your Phone	493
Phone Menu	493
Making and Receiving a Phone Call	494
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	495

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	496
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	496

Apps

App Precautions	497
App Requirements	497
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device	497
Enabling Apps on an Android Device	497
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	497
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off	498

Navigation

Connected Navigation	499
Accessing Navigation	499
Navigation Map Updates	499
Adjusting the Map	499
Setting a Destination	499
Waypoints	500
Route Guidance	500
Trailer Towing Navigation	501

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking	502
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking	502
Software Update Settings	503
Software Update Indicators	504

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset	505
---------------------------------	-----

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Authorized Dealer Directory	506
-----------------------------------	-----

Service Intervals - Turkey

Service Intervals	512
-------------------------	-----

Customer Information

Rollover Warning	513
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment	513
Battery Performance and Durability Information - Battery Electric Vehicle	513
REACH	514
Radio Frequency Certification Labels	514
Replacement Parts Recommendation	515
Mobile Communications Equipment	515
eCall User Information	516
End User License Agreement	519
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle	544

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	545
-------------------------------------	-----

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication, whether in-vehicle center display screen, print, in Ford mobile app or online, to familiarize yourself with the features on your vehicle.

Note: *Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.*

Note: *Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.*

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Driver Assistance Systems

Your vehicle may contain certain Driver Assistance Systems (i.e., Pre-Collision Assist, Adaptive Cruise Control, Lane Keeping System, and BlueCruise). Use of these technologies still requires your complete attention while driving. Your hands need to be on the steering wheel at all times unless you are actively operating BlueCruise and your vehicle informs you that you do not need to have your hands on the steering wheel. With all driving technologies, your eyes need to be on the road, and you must be alert to your surroundings. Your complete attention is required while driving since you may need to take immediate control due to the presence of roadway hazards or a change in road, weather, or lighting conditions. Use of these features does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Always be prepared to manually control the speed and direction of your vehicle. Please refer to this manual for information pertaining to each Driver Assistance feature.

Aftermarket Modifications, Add-ons, Accessories, and Repairs

Unapproved modifications to your vehicle may affect your vehicle's height or suspension and could shift the sensors out of the position from which they were designed and tested. Unapproved aftermarket parts or add-on accessories could also block or interfere with your vehicle's sensors or electronic systems.

Do not modify your vehicle with unapproved aftermarket products or repairs. Unapproved modifications may affect your vehicle warranty, performance, safety, or durability. We are not responsible for any damage or adverse effects caused by unapproved modifications to your vehicle or its systems.

Introduction

Providing Feedback

If you would like to provide feedback to the Owner's Manual team, please email us at OWNERMANUALFEEDBACK@ford.com.

You will not receive a direct email response. Your submission will be investigated and necessary changes will be made to the Owner's Manual content.

To help investigate your submission, please include the following information:

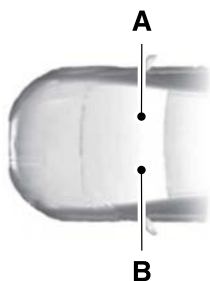
- Your vehicle model
- The country in which your vehicle was purchased
- The Owner's Manual section needing investigation

Illustrations

Note: Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.

Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



- A Right-hand side.
B Left-hand side.

Accessing the Digital Owner's Manual

The online version of the Owner's Manual may contain the very latest information, which may vary slightly from the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual originally provided with your vehicle. We recommend updating the in-vehicle digital Owner's Manual when prompted using Over The Air updates.

Vehicles with a Portrait Center Display Screen

The Owner's Manual application is located in the Apps list.

Vehicles with a Landscape Center Display Screen

Depending on your vehicle, the Owner's Manual application is located in either the Apps list or the Features list.

Accessing the Online and Printed Owner's Manual

Online Owner's Manual

- Through your device's app store, you can download the Ford mobile app.
- You can visit the local Ford Website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.



Introduction

Note: We strongly recommend downloading a copy of the Owner's Manual and having it with you whenever you drive, and to view the information if you are unable to be inside the vehicle.

Printed Owner's Manual

In U.S. and Canada, visit <https://www.helminc.com> or see an authorized dealer.



In Europe, visit <https://www.z-order.eu> or see an authorized dealer.



For all other Countries, see your authorized dealer.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

WARNINGS AND NOTES USED IN THIS PUBLICATION

Warnings Used in This Publication

We include warnings in this publication to make you aware of possible danger. You can keep yourself and others safe if you follow the instructions highlighted by the warning symbol.

Notes Used in This Publication

We include notes to give you more information to those instructions that require further explanation.

SPECIAL NOTICES - TURKEY

Consumer* Information

*Consumer: Real or legal person acting for commercial or non-occupational purposes. If a driver drives his vehicle for commercial or occupational purposes, whether on full-time or part-time basis, he may not be evaluated as a "Consumer" under the legislation.

In the event a vehicle is purchased subject to Consumer Warranty terms but driven for commercial or occupational purposes thereafter or if purchased subject to Commercial Warranty Terms and then driven out of commercial or occupational purposes, COMMERCIAL WARRANTY TERMS shall apply under general statutory provisions. This shall bind Driver and other persons who take over such vehicle. Please see Ford Warranty Terms for detailed information.

Optional rights granted to consumers pursuant to Consumer Protection Law no. 6502 and Regulation for Introductory and Owner Manuals published at the Official Gazette dated 13.06.2014 and no. 29029 and information related to authorities to which consumers may file complaints and objections are as follows:

I. Optional Rights of Consumers

- 1) If merchandise is understood to be defective consumer may exercise one of following rights;
 - a) Reneging on contract by notifying that he is ready to return sold item,
 - b) Retaining sold item and asking discount from sales price pro rata to defect,

Introduction

c) In case excessive expense is not required, asking free of charge repair of sold item, all expenses at seller's account,

d) If possible, asking replacement of sold item with an equivalent free of defects,

you can use one of these rights. Seller shall be liable to fulfill such request preferred by consumer.

2) Rights of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects may also be exercised against manufacturer or importer. Seller, manufacturer and importer shall be severally liable for fulfillment of rights set out in this clause. Manufacturer or importer shall not be held liable if they prove that defect has arisen after merchandise is placed on the market by them.

3) If free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects would bring along disproportional inconvenience for seller, consumer may exercise one of rights of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect. During determination of disproportionality, matters such as value of merchandise free of defects, importance of defect and whether resorting to other optional rights would create any problems for consumer shall be considered.

4) In the event either right of free of charge repair or replacement of merchandise with an equivalent free of defects is chosen, such request must be fulfilled within maximum thirty business days from notification of this request to seller, manufacturer or importer. However, concerning merchandise included at the list attachment of regulation issued as per article 58 of Consumer Protection Law no. 6502, consumer's request for free of charge repair shall be fulfilled within maximum repair period set out at the regulation. Otherwise, consumer shall be free to exercise other optional rights.

5) In cases consumer chooses right of reneging on contract or discount from price pro rata to defect, full price paid or amount of discount from price shall be promptly refunded to consumer.

6) Any expenses incurred because of exercising optional rights shall be covered by the party fulfilling the right chosen by consumer. Consumer, along with one of such optional rights, may also claim compensation as per provisions of Turkish Code of Obligations dated 11/01/2011 and no. 6098.

II. Consumer Complaints and Objections

Consumers may file applications regarding complaints and objections to consumer courts and consumer arbitration committees in accordance with arrangements provided at Consumer Protection Law no. 6502.

Manufacturer or Importer

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.S.
Akpınar Mah. Hasan Basri Cad. No: 2
34885 Sancaktepe/Istanbul
Trade Registration No: 73232 - Istanbul
Tel: 0.216 564 71 00
Fax: 0.216 564 73 85
www.fordotosan.com.tr
www.ford.com.tr

Service Life

The service life of this vehicle is 10 years.

Symbols Glossary

SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Depending on your vehicle options, market, and instrument cluster type, not all symbols shown are available.

Lighting and Signaling



High beams. See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 100). See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 101).



Auto high beams. See **Automatic High Beam Control Indicators** (page 104).



Low beams. See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 99).



Front fog lamps. See **Using the Front Fog Lamps** (page 102).



Rear fog lamps. See **Using the Rear Fog Lamps** (page 102).



Hazard warning. See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 373).



Turn signal - right. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 101). See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 373).



Turn signal - left. See **Using the Turn Signal Lamps** (page 101). See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 373).



Positioning/side lights. See **Headlamp Indicators** (page 101).

Brakes



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 263). See **Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions** (page 264).

See **Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 265). See **Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 266). See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 268).



Brake failure. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 263).



Parking brake. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 263). See **Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps** (page 268).

See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 267). See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency** (page 267).



Anti-lock brake system malfunction. See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 263). See **Brakes – Warning Lamps** (page 263).



Automatic brake hold. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 276).



Automatic brake hold off or unavailable. See **Auto Hold Indicators** (page 276).

Engine



Check engine. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 179).

See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 212). See **Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps** (page 214). See **Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps** (page 203). See **Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators** (page 381). See **Coolant – Warning Lamps** (page 417).

Symbols Glossary



Engine oil pressure. See **Engine Oil** (page 411).



Engine oil temperature. See **Engine Oil** (page 411).



Engine oil level. See **Checking the Engine Oil Level** (page 411).



Change engine oil. See **Engine Oil** (page 411).



Engine coolant temperature. See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 212).

See **Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators** (page 381). See **Coolant – Warning Lamps** (page 417). See **Coolant – Warning Lamps** (page 421).



Auto Start/Stop. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators** (page 188). See

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators (page 191).



Auto Start/Stop off or unavailable. See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators**

(page 188). See **Auto-Start-Stop Indicators** (page 191).



Diesel pre-heat. See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page 173). See **Starting a Diesel Engine** (page

174).



Eco mode. See **Eco** (page 259).



Diesel Exhaust Fluid Level Low. See **Selective Catalytic Reduction System – Warning Lamps** (page 209).

Fuel



Fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps** (page 201).



Water/Moisture in fuel system. See **Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check** (page 435).



Fuel and fuel filler door location. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Door** (page 118).

Transmission



Non-emission powertrain fault. See **Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps** (page 179). See **High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 217). See **Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps** (page 203).



Shift up. See **Manual Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 246). See **Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 249).



Shift down. See **Manual Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 246). See **Automatic Transmission Shift Indicators** (page 249).

Vehicle Handling



Selectable drive mode - normal. See **Normal** (page 259).



Selectable drive mode - ECO. See **Eco** (page 259).



Selectable drive mode - sport. See **Sport** (page 259).



Selectable drive mode - slippery. See **Slippery** (page 259).



Steering system fault. See **Steering – Warning Lamps** (page 280).

Symbols Glossary

Driver Assistance



Cruise control. See **Cruise Control Indicators** (page 293).



Adaptive cruise control. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 304).



Adaptive cruise control failure. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators** (page 304).



One pedal drive. See **One Pedal Drive Indicators** (page 260).



Lane keeping assist. See **Lane Keeping System Indicators** (page 320).



Lane centering assist. See **Lane Centering Indicators** (page 307).



Speed limiter. See **Speed Limiter Indicators** (page 314). See **Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators** (page 316).



Animals on the road. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



Approaching vehicle coming the wrong way. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



Broken down vehicle or accident. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



Broken down vehicle or accident. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



Fire. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



General. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



Hazardous driving conditions. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



Objects on the road. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



People on the road. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



Road works. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).



Traffic jam. See **Local Hazard Information Indicators** (page 312).

Safety



Seatbelt. See **Seatbelt Reminder Indicators** (page 56).



Airbag. See **Airbags – Warning Lamps** (page 61).



Stability control system active or not available. See **Stability Control Indicator** (page 278). See **Traction Control Indicator** (page 277). See **Post-Collision Braking** (page 376).



Stability control system off. See **Traction Control – Warning Lamps** (page 277).



Tire failure/Low tire pressure. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps** (page 468). See **What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 467).

Symbols Glossary



Forward collision warning system off or unavailable. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps** (page 343).



Reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist Indicators** (page 272).



Blind spot information system. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 331). See **Exit Warning Indicators** (page 333).



Blind spot information system off or unavailable. See **Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps** (page 331).



Cross traffic alert. See **Cross Traffic Alert Indicators** (page 337).



Icy road conditions. See **Driving on Snow and Ice** (page 368).



Driver alert system. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 347).



Driver alert system off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 347).



Driver alert system 2.0 off or unavailable. See **Driver Alert Indicators** (page 347).



Door(s) ajar. See **Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps** (page 76).

Security



Trunk release/ajar. See **Liftgate – Warning Lamps** (page 84).

Electrical Systems



Battery charge level. See **Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps** (page 212).

See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 425). See **12V Battery – Warning Lamps** (page 427).



Propulsion battery. See **Battery Charge** (page 123).



Propulsion battery temperature. See **High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge** (page 119).



Electric motor temperature. See **Electric Motor Temperature Gauge** (page 119).



External cord connected. See **Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps** (page 244).

Data Privacy



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 479).

Note: The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 497).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

Data Privacy

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the system reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 505).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.

EMERGENCY CALL SYSTEM DATA

When the emergency call system is active, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off, or deactivation of the high-voltage battery. Certain versions or updates to the emergency call system may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to emergency services operators your vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist emergency services operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

Examples of data that the system could transmit are:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Vehicle propulsion storage type.
- Current time.
- Vehicle location and direction.
- Accident direction.
- Change in velocity of the vehicle.
- Whether the call was automatically or manually initiated.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of occupants in the vehicle.

Note: You cannot deactivate emergency call systems that are required by law.

Environment

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

Sustainability is a priority at Ford. We are constantly looking for ways to reduce our impact on the planet while providing customers with great products and delivering a strong business. You should play your part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps toward this aim.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING LABELS

France Only



A déposer dans le réseau Ford agréé ou via le site www.valorauto.com.

Vous trouvez les informations sur le recyclage de votre Véhicule devenu Hors d'Usage via notre site:
Recyclage de votre voiture Ford : Comment ça marche ? | Ford FR.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF BATTERIES



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

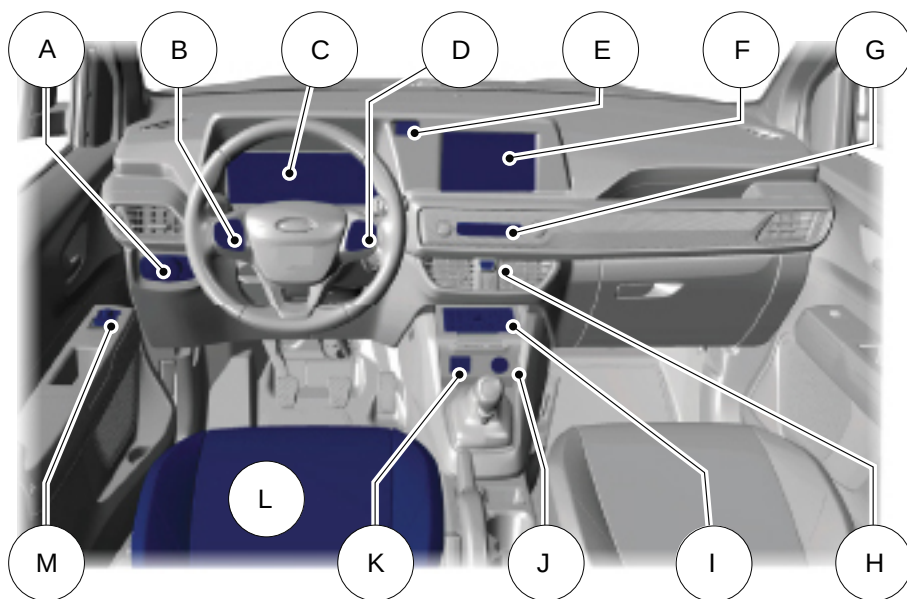
Batteries contain toxic metals such as cadmium, mercury and lead along with other hazardous materials like lithium, posing a significant environmental hazard if not disposed of properly.

Chemical symbols of metals concerned

Cd	Cadmium.
Pb	Lead.
Li	Lithium.
Li-Ion	Lithium-Ion.

Visual Search

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - DIESEL/GASOLINE, LHD

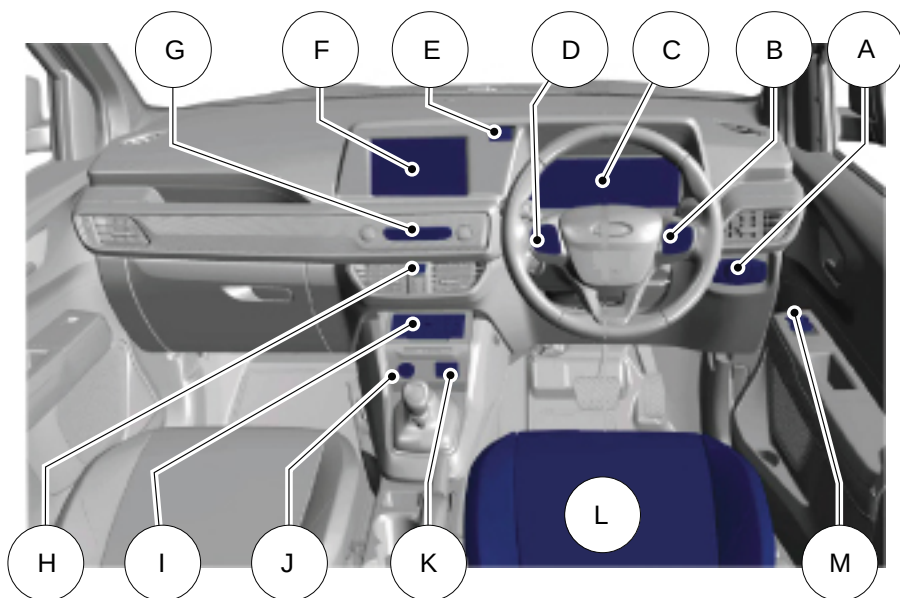


- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 99).
- B See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 298). See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 298). See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 292).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 117).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 120).
- E See **How Does Driver Alert Work** (page 345).
- F See **Center Display Precautions** (page 488).
- G See **Switching Parking Aid On and Off** (page 282).
- H See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 373).
- I See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 168).
- J See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 166).
- K See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 162).

Visual Search

- L See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 149).
- M See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 114).

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - DIESEL/GASOLINE, RHD

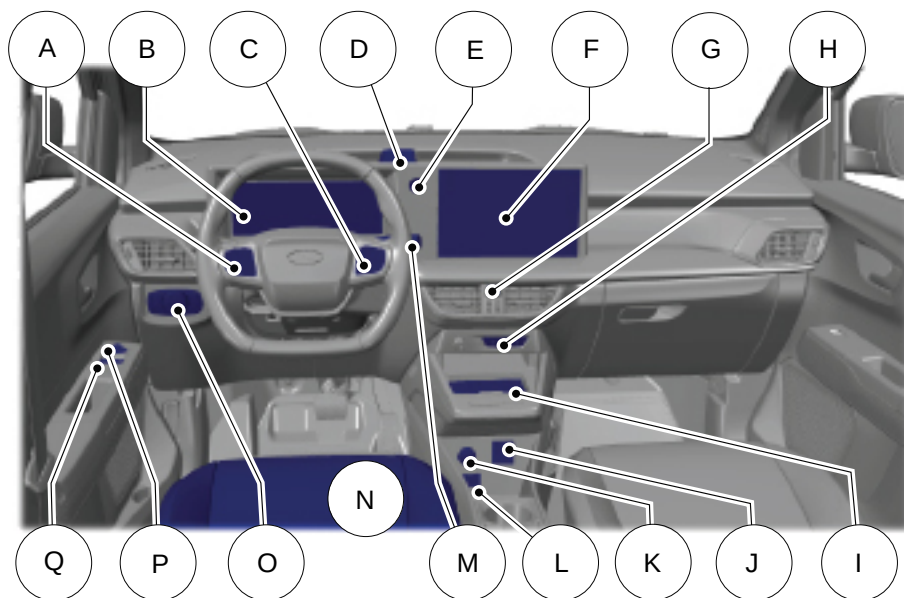


- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 99).
- B See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 120).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 116).
- D See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 298). See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 298). See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 292).
- E See **How Does Driver Alert Work** (page 345).
- F See **Center Display Precautions** (page 488).
- G See **Switching Parking Aid On and Off** (page 282).

Visual Search

- H See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 373).
- I See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 168).
- J See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 166).
- K See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 162).
- L See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 149).
- M See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 114).

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, LHD



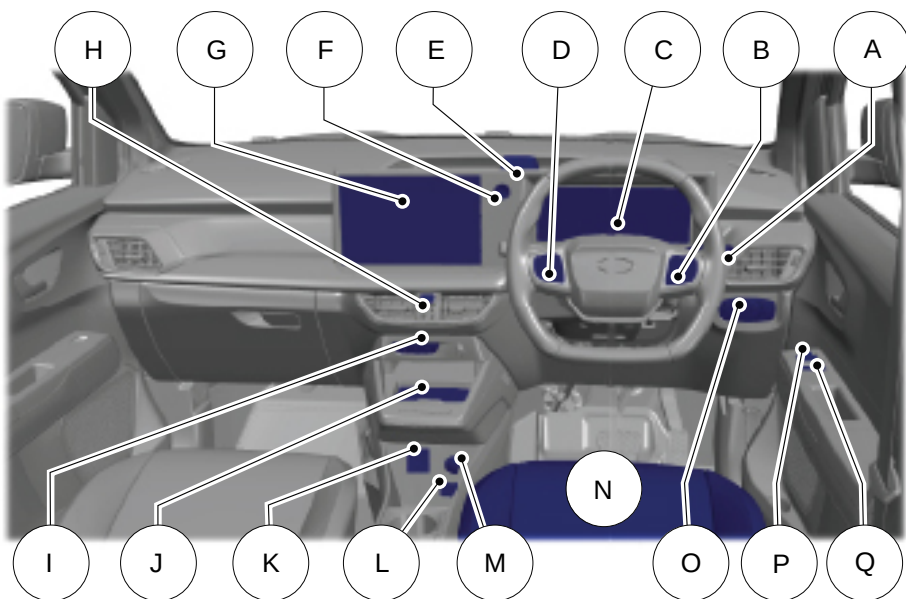
- A See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 298). See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 292).
- B See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 117).
- C See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 120).
- D See **What Is Driver Alert** (page 345).

Visual Search

- E See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 184).
- F See **Center Display Precautions** (page 488).
- G See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 373).
- H See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 282).
- I See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 168).
- J See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 164).
- K See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 166).
- L See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 162).
- M See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 254).
- N See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 149).
- O See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 99).
- P See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 114).
- Q See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 109). See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 109).

Visual Search

INTERIOR OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, RHD

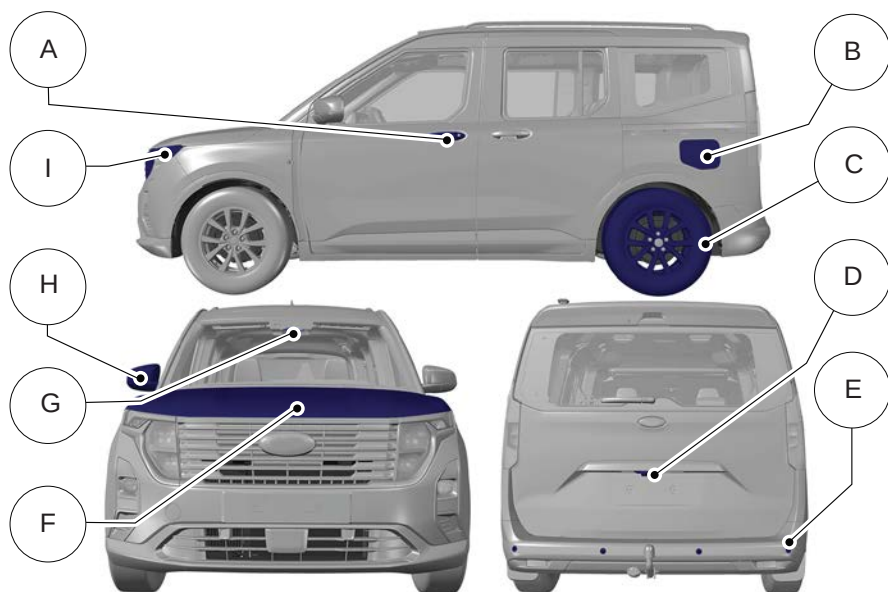


- A See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 254).
- B See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 120).
- C See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 117).
- D See **Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off** (page 298). See **Switching Cruise Control On and Off** (page 292).
- E See **How Does Driver Alert Work** (page 345).
- F See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 184).
- G See **Center Display Precautions** (page 488).
- H See **Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off** (page 373).
- I See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 282).
- J See **Charging a Wireless Device** (page 168).
- K See **What Is the Power Outlet** (page 166).
- L See **Locating the USB Ports** (page 162).

Visual Search

- M See **Power Outlet Precautions** (page 164).
- N See **Front Seat Precautions** (page 149).
- O See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 99).
- P See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 114).
- Q See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 109). See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 109).

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW - DIESEL/GASOLINE

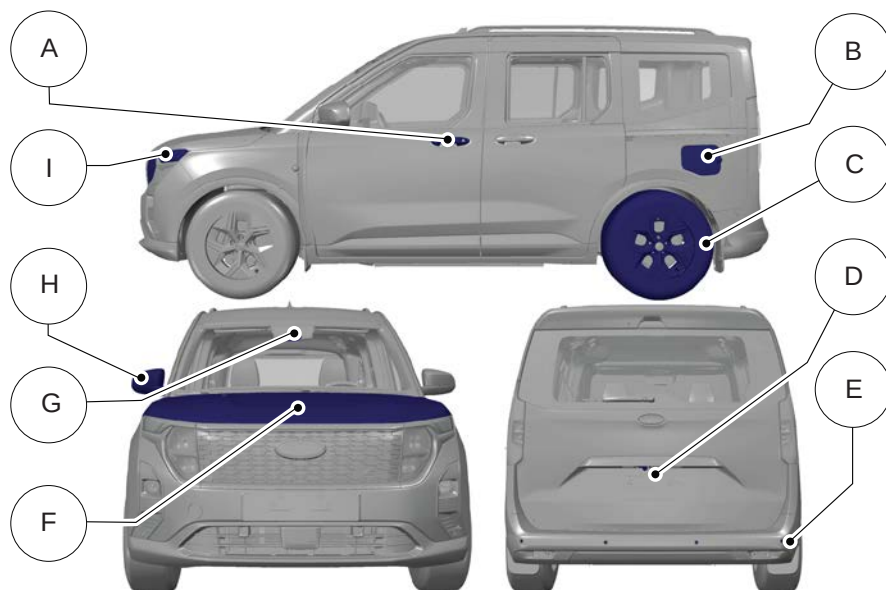


- A See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 72).
- B See **Fuel and Refueling Precautions** (page 193).
- C See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 458).
- D See **Rear View Camera Guide Lines** (page 288).
- E See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 282).

Visual Search

- F See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 404).
- G See **What Is Pre-Collision Assist** (page 339).
- H See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 114).
- I See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 99).

EXTERIOR OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



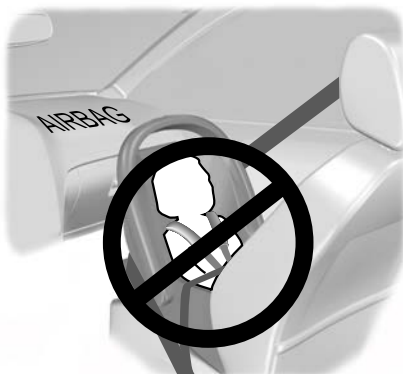
- A See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade** (page 72).
- B See **Charging Equipment Precautions** (page 218).
- C See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 460).
- D See **Rear View Camera Guide Lines** (page 288).
- E See **Parking Aid Precautions** (page 282).
- F See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 404).
- G See **What Is Pre-Collision Assist** (page 339).

Visual Search

- H See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 114).
- I See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 99).

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R129 or ECE-R44.03 (or later) have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

WARNING: The passenger airbag must be deactivated when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

WARNING: Following the removal of the child restraint, you must check the activation of the passenger airbag.

WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

Child Safety



WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.



WARNING: Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

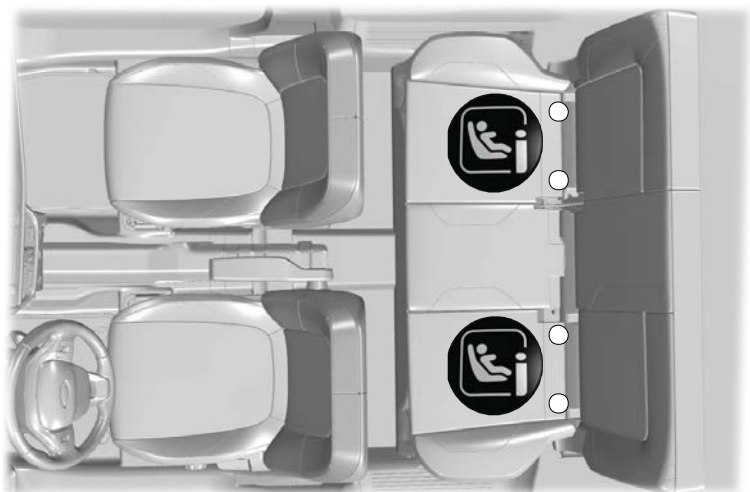
Anchor points are designed to allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

Child Safety



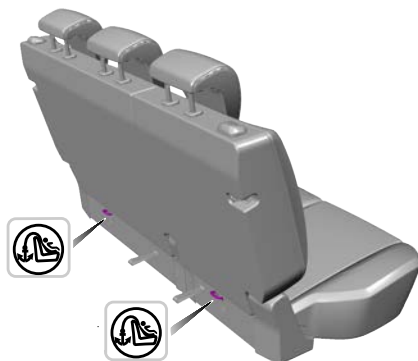
LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



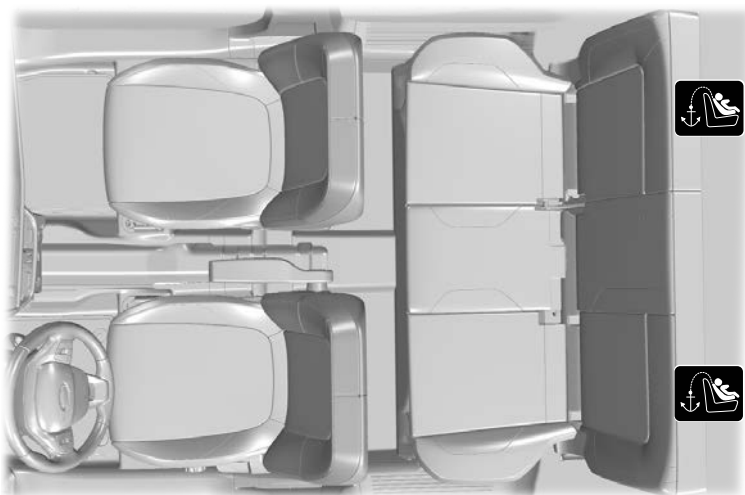
WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.

Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions for installing a child seat with a top tether.

For child restraints with a top tether the tether anchor point is on the back of the seat.



Child Safety



Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITHOUT: REAR CENTER SEAT HEAD RESTRAINT

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Rear outermost seats	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

Note: No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.

Child Safety

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	F, G ¹	E ¹	C, D, E ¹	A, B, B ¹	C, D ¹
	Fixture.	L1, L2 ¹	R1 ¹	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ¹	F2, F2X, F3 ¹	R2X, R2, R3 ¹
	Size type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL

¹ The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

Note: No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.

Child Safety

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹

¹ The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Note: *No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.*

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION - VEHICLES WITH: REAR CENTER SEAT HEAD RESTRAINT

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	15–25 kg (33–55 lb)	22–36 kg (49–79 lb)
Front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Rear seats. ²	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

² Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

Note: No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–10 kg (0–22 lb)	0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)	9–18 kg (20–40 lb)
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	F, G ¹	E ¹	C, D, E ¹	A, B, B1 ¹	C, D ¹

Child Safety

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–10 kg (0–22lb)	0–13 kg (0–29lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)	9–18 kg (20–40lb)
	Fixture.	L1, L2 ¹	R1 ¹	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ¹	F2, F2X, F3 ¹	R2X, R2, R3 ¹
	Size type.	IL	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

¹The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

Note: No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.

i-Size Child Restraints

	Front Passenger Seat	Rear Outermost Seats	Rear Center Seat
Rearward facing child restraint systems on front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	-	-
i-Size child restraint systems.	X	i-U	X
Suitable booster fixture.	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹	B2, B3 ¹

¹The fixture is defined for booster child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on i-Size boosters.

i-U Suitable for use with forward and rearward facing i-Size child restraint systems.

X Not suitable for use with i-Size child restraint systems.

Note: No lower tether anchorage points are available on any seating positions.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Size Class Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
40–83 cm (15–35 in) 0–13 kg (0–29 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pebble 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base) or seatbelt only.
40–105 cm (15–40 in) 0–17.5 kg (0–39 lb)	Maxi-Cosi.	Pearl 360 and FamilyFix 360 base. ¹	ISOFIX and support leg (base).
100–150 cm (40–60 in) 15–36 kg (33–79 lb)	Britax Römer.	KIDFIX OEM i-Size. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: REAR CENTER SEAT HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS - VEHICLES WITH: REAR CENTER SEAT HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.

Child Safety



WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

Note: When using a child restraint on the rear center seat, you must pull the seatbelt through the webbing guide before you insert the tongue into the buckle. See **Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts** (page 54).

BOOSTER SEATS

Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg (33 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion



WARNING: When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Child Safety



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg (49 lb) but are less than 150 cm (60 in) tall on a booster cushion.

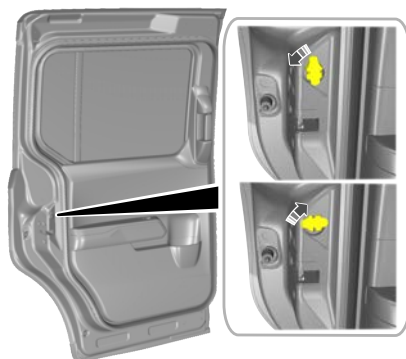
CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



Note: Check the label for the correct location of the child safety lock.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door.

You must set the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn it counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn it clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Note: When the child safety locks are on, you can still operate the rear windows if you have power rear windows. To lock the power rear windows, See **Locking the Rear Window Controls** (page 112).

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: REAR CENTER SEAT HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS - VEHICLES WITH: REAR CENTER SEAT HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



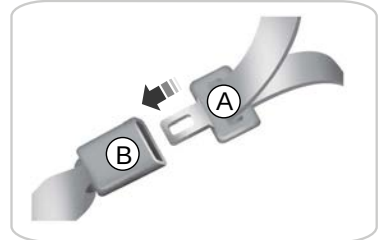
WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the seatbelt from retracting correctly. This could cause the seatbelt to become slack which could increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

Note: When fastening the rear center seatbelt, make sure to pull it through the webbing guide to ensure the highest safety level.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: REAR CENTER SEAT HEAD RESTRAINT

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



- A Seatbelt tongue.
- B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

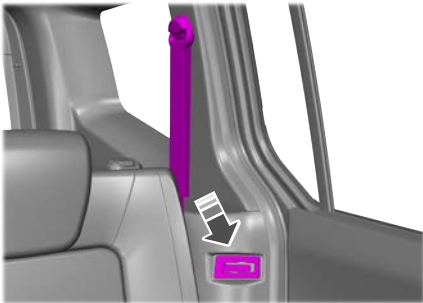
Seatbelts

Unfastening the Seatbelts

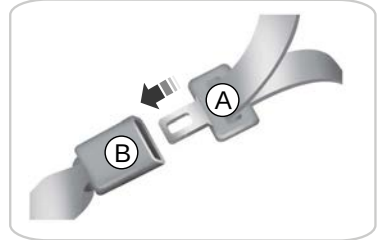
1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.



Securing the Rear Side Seatbelts



Attach the rear side seatbelts to the webbing clips on the seat sides when not in use to prevent the seatbelts from getting stuck.



- A Seatbelt tongue.
B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: *It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.*

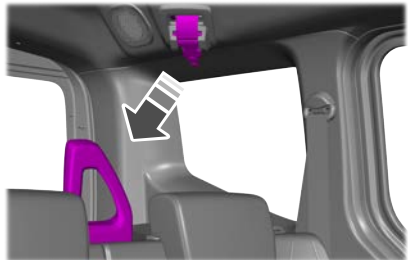
2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.
3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS - VEHICLES WITH: REAR CENTER SEAT HEAD RESTRAINT

Fastening the Seatbelts

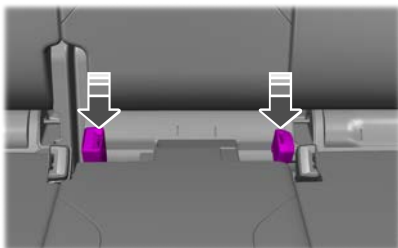
All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.

Fastening the Rear Center Seatbelt



Seatbelts

1. Pull the rear center seatbelt through the webbing guide.



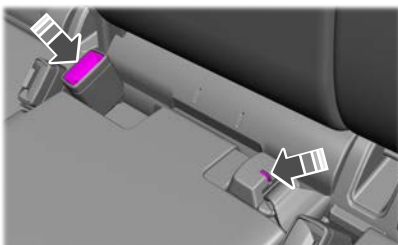
2. Insert the small tongue into the small buckle, and the regular tongue into the regular buckle.

Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Unfastening the Rear Center Seatbelt

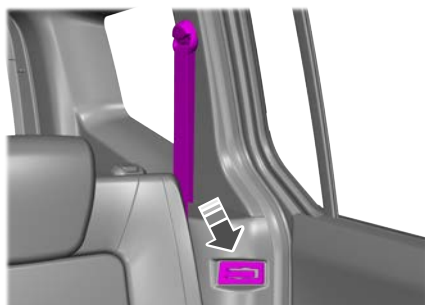
1. Press the red button on the regular buckle.



2. Insert the regular tongue into the highlighted slot on the back of the small buckle.

3. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Securing the Rear Side Seatbelts



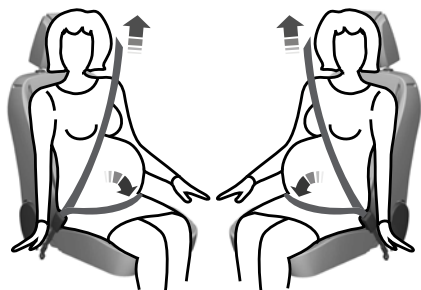
Attach the rear side seatbelts to the webbing clips on the seat sides when not in use to prevent the seatbelts from getting stuck.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY



WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Seatbelts



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT REMINDER

SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS

A warning lamp illuminates if the ignition is on and any of the following occur:

- A front seat is occupied and the seatbelt has not been fastened.
- A rear seatbelt has been recently unfastened.



The warning lamp illuminates until you fasten your seatbelt.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

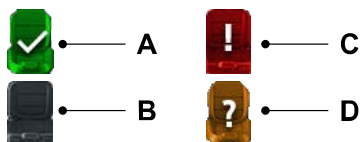
The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, this feature may not be available.

CHECKING SEATBELT STATUS



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

Checking Seatbelt Status

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Status Information**.
3. Select **Seat Belts**.

Seatbelts

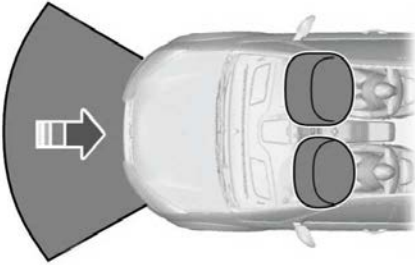
SEATBELTS – TROUBLESHOOTING

SEATBELTS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Belt monitor malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The front airbags are designed to deploy during a significant frontal or near-frontal crash. The airbags inflate within a few thousandths of a second cushioning forward body movement and deflate on contact with the occupant. The front airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor frontal crash, rear crash, side crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front seat backrests, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by the manufacturer of your vehicle could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest. There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

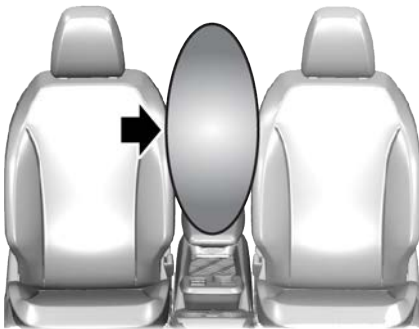
The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

Airbags

The side airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral crash. They could also deploy during a significant frontal crash. The side airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

HOW DOES THE CENTER MOUNTED SIDE AIRBAG WORK

The center mounted side airbag is on the innermost side of the driver seat. There is a label attached to the side of the backrest to indicate this.

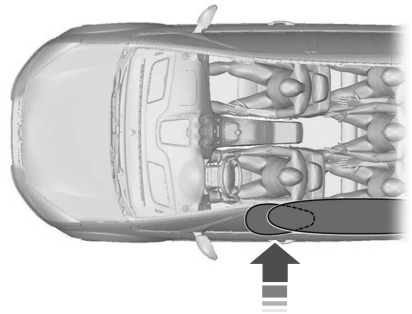


The center mounted side airbag is designed to inflate between the driver seat and the passenger seat to enhance the protection in certain crashes.

This airbag is designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbag reduces contact between the driver and the front seat passenger during side impacts. The airbag is not designed to deploy during a minor lateral or frontal crash, a rear crash or a rollover.

HOW DO THE SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS WORK

WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



The airbags are designed to deploy during a significant lateral or frontal angled crash. The airbags are not designed to deploy during a minor lateral and frontal crash, rear crash or a vehicle rollover.

AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

Airbags



WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

PASSENGER AIRBAG INDICATORS

The passenger airbag on and off indicators are on the center console.

The passenger airbag indicator shows if the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled or disabled.

Note: When your vehicle is on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.



It illuminates when the airbag is on.



It illuminates when the airbag is off.



SWITCHING THE PASSENGER AIRBAG ON AND OFF



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag on following the removal of the child restraint.



WARNING: You must switch the passenger airbag off when using a rearward facing child restraint on the front seat.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Passenger airbag**.
4. Switch **Passenger airbag** on or off.

AIRBAGS – TROUBLESHOOTING

AIRBAGS – WARNING LAMPS



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, continues to flash or remains on when your vehicle is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

AIRBAGS – AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the airbag warning lamp is not working.

Pedestrian Alert System

WHAT IS THE PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM

Electric drive vehicles can be extremely

quiet. The pedestrian alert system is designed to generate a sound to alert pedestrians to the presence of an electric drive vehicle.

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

PEDESTRIAN ALERT SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Action
Pedestrian Sounder malfunction Service now	The system has malfunctioned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WHAT IS ECALL

eCall is an emergency call system that complies with European Union Regulation (EU) 2015/758. See **eCall User Information** (page 516).

The system uses the public cell phone network to initiate a call to the public emergency services when activated automatically in a severe accident or manually by the vehicle occupants.

eCall is designed for emergency calls in case of severe accidents or other emergencies that require the emergency services. It does not support other voice calls.

HOW DOES ECALL WORK

If an accident results in an attempt to deploy an airbag, excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts, or to shut off the fuel pump, or to deactivate the high voltage battery, the system initiates a call to the emergency services. This call cannot be canceled.

In the case of an emergency, the system, as a means of communication aid, can help you contact specific rescue departments of public emergency services. The system does not deploy the rescue operations. The local public emergency service deploys specific rescue operations according to the actual situation.

During an emergency call, the system transmits vehicle data to the emergency service. See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 30).

Note: *If the transmission is unsuccessful, this could result in the emergency operator not receiving your vehicle data.*

Note: *If the system is unable to initiate a call to the emergency services, a voice prompt plays and the emergency call indicator illuminates.*

EMERGENCY CALL REQUIREMENTS

The system only operates in areas with a compatible cell phone network and emergency services infrastructure.

EMERGENCY CALL LIMITATIONS

Not all accidents activate the system. If an accident does trigger the system, it initiates a call to the emergency services. Do not wait for the system to initiate a call if you are able to do so. Call emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear the system within five seconds of the accident, the system could be non-functional.

Using a non-Ford audio system could result in the system not properly operating.

MANUALLY MAKING AN EMERGENCY CALL



WARNING: Use caution when making a manual emergency call when driving.

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Press the SOS symbol on the overhead console to open the emergency call button cover.

3. Press the emergency call button to initiate a call to the emergency services.

Note: Press the button again before the call is connected to cancel it.

4. Speak to the operator.

Note: After completing an emergency call, the emergency operator can call your vehicle. The system automatically answers incoming calls for approximately an hour.

EMERGENCY CALL INDICATORS

**WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



The indicator is integrated into the emergency call button cover on the overhead console.

It illuminates brightly for a short time when you switch the ignition on.

Emergency Call Indicator Status	Description
Indicator off.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Dimmed red.	Normal operation.
Rapidly flashing.	The system is initiating an emergency call.
Moderately flashing.	The system is transmitting vehicle data to the emergency services.
Slowly flashing.	The system is connected to the emergency services and communication is established.
Bright red.	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CHANGING THE BACKUP BATTERY

The system has a backup battery and indicates when it needs to be changed. We recommend that you have the battery changed by an authorized dealer.

ECALL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ECALL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Emergency Call System malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The typical operating range for your remote control is approximately 10 m (33 ft).

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- Weather conditions.
- Nearby radio towers.
- Structures around your vehicle.
- Other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other short distance radio transmissions, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, remote controls and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure you have locked your vehicle before leaving it unattended.

Note: If you are within range of your vehicle, the remote control will operate if you unintentionally press any button.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE FLIP KEY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



Press the button to release the key. Press and hold the button to fold the key back when not in use.

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Keys and Remote Controls

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button on the key twice within three seconds. The direction indicators will flash.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



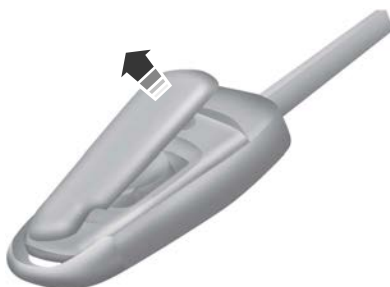
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

1. Press the key release button.



2. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and gently push the clip.
3. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



4. Carefully remove the cover.



Keys and Remote Controls

5. Insert a screwdriver as shown to release the battery.

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.



6. Remove the battery.
7. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
8. Replace the battery cover.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



CAUTION: The battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body. Seek medical attention immediately.



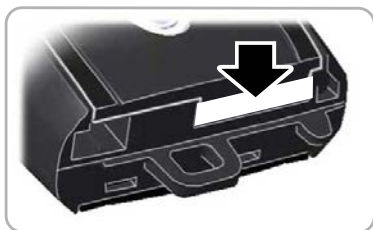
Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

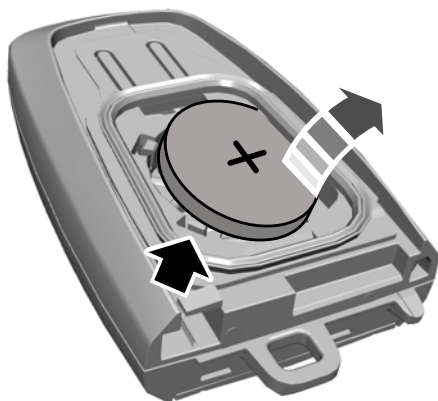


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Keys and Remote Controls



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. If possible, provide them with the key number from the tag provided with the original key. You can also obtain extra keys.

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Contact an authorized dealer to program remote controls for your vehicle.

Keys and Remote Controls

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Key Battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

Keys and Remote Controls

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is the fan noise I hear when I press the unlock button on the remote control?

- This is the blower motor pushing fresh air into the cabin and out through cabin exhaust vents. Your vehicle has air purge that could turn on when you press the unlock button on the remote control or when certain conditions are met.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamp confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

Double Locking the Doors



WARNING: Do not use double locking when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside when double locked.

Double locking is a theft protection feature that prevents someone from opening the doors from the inside.

Note: If you double lock your vehicle while inside, switch the ignition on to return the door locks to a single locked state.



Press the button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash three times.

Note: You can double lock your vehicle with the key. Turn the key to the lock position twice within three seconds. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE KEY BLADE

Unlocking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle.

Note: Unlock only unlocks driver door.

Locking the Doors

1. Release the key blade from the remote control.
2. Fully insert the key into the driver door lock cylinder.
3. Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

Note: Locking performs a central lock of all doors.

What Are TVL Mechanical Locks

Optional mechanical locking system that provides additional security to passenger and cargo doors. For more information, see the TVL website.

Note: Do not engage the TVL locks when passengers or animals are inside your vehicle, excluding the relock. The doors cannot be unlocked or opened from inside when the TVL locks are engaged.

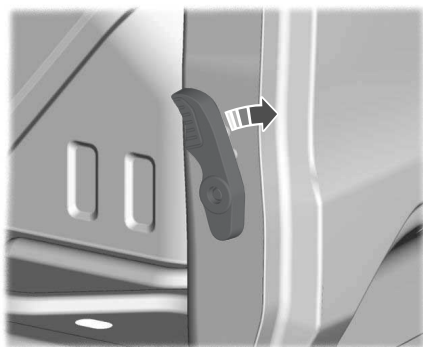
Doors and Locks

OPENING AND CLOSING THE DOORS

Opening the Double Rear Doors



Pull the exterior handle to open the main rear door.



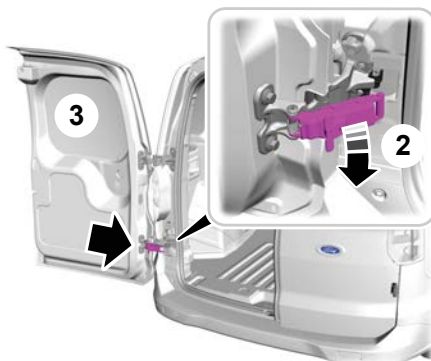
Pull this handle to open the secondary rear door.

Fully Opening the Double Rear Doors



1. Open the rear door to 90°.

Note: At 90° angle point you feel a strong resistance.



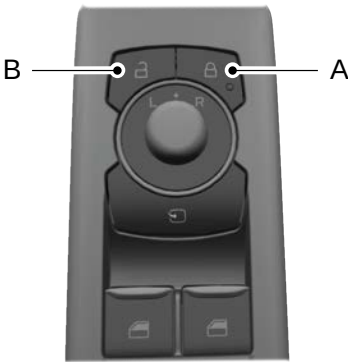
2. Pull the lever to release the catch on the respective side.
3. Fully open the rear door.

Doors and Locks

Note: If you open the rear doors the rear lights might be covered. Make sure the vehicle is visible from the rear in compliance with local regulations, for example use a warning triangle if necessary.

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

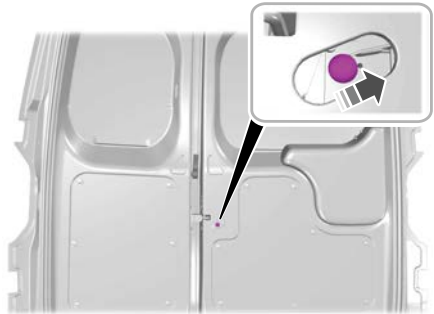


- A Lock
- B Unlock

Note: LED illuminates for five minutes to confirm locked status. LED only illuminates if all doors are locked. If you open any door using the interior handle, the LED extinguishes.

Note: After locking, the unlock button remains operative for a short period of time.

OPENING THE REAR DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE IN AN EMERGENCY



Pull the interior handle up to open the door in an emergency.

REPROGRAMMING THE UNLOCKING FUNCTION

You can program the unlocking function so that only the driver door, or cabin door unlocks.

Press and hold the unlock and lock buttons on the remote control simultaneously for at least four seconds with the ignition off. The direction indicators flash twice to confirm the change.

To return to the original unlocking function, repeat the process.

Doors and Locks

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door, or cabin door unlocks, the following occurs:

- If you unlock the driver door, or cabin door first, all other doors remain locked. You can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control on the driver door or cabin door. Doors can be individually unlocked by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.
- If you press the unlocking button on the remote control once, only the driver door, or cabin door unlocks. Press the unlocking button on the remote control twice within three seconds to unlock all doors.

Note: Depending on the locking mechanism, you can program the unlocking function to unlock the driver door or the cabin doors.

You can also change between the unlocking modes on the center display.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Global Unlock** on or off.

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is a feature that centrally unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop and you open the driver door using the interior door handle.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after:

1. All the doors are closed and locked and your vehicle exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph).

2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off.

Note: If you open the driver door after 10 minutes, Autounlock does not unlock all other doors.

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Unlock** on or off.

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked after requesting a lock.

HOW DOES MISLOCK WORK

The horn sounds when you press the lock button on the remote control and a door is open.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: KEYLESS ENTRY AND PUSH BUTTON START

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

Doors and Locks

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY AND PUSH BUTTON START

When you press the lock button once, the direction indicators do not flash if:

- Any door or the liftgate is open.
- The hood is open.

Note: *If you lock your vehicle with the keyless entry lock sensors on the top of the exterior front door handles, the mislock chirp does not sound when a door is open. See **Using Keyless Entry** (page 80).*

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

AUTORELOCK

HOW DOES AUTORELOCK WORK

The doors automatically relock if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The doors relock to central lock and the alarm returns to its previous state.

DOOR LOCK INDICATORS

An LED on the power door lock control illuminates when all doors are locked. It remains on for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Door Ajar Audible Warning

Sounds when any door is not fully closed and your vehicle is moving.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Sliding Door

SLIDING DOOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Fully close the sliding door before driving, to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



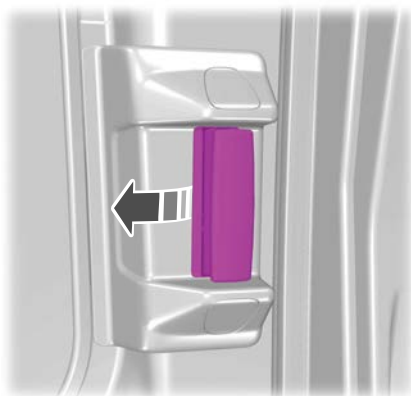
WARNING: Do not open or close the sliding door when your hands are near the tracks or rollers. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Note: When opening the sliding door make sure you fully open it until you hear a click. This way the door stop engage can protect you from accidentally closing.

Note: Do not leave the sliding door open when you are driving. This could damage the sliding door and its components.

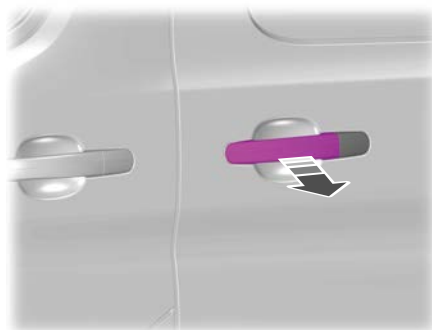
OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Pull the interior door handle to open the sliding door.

OPENING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

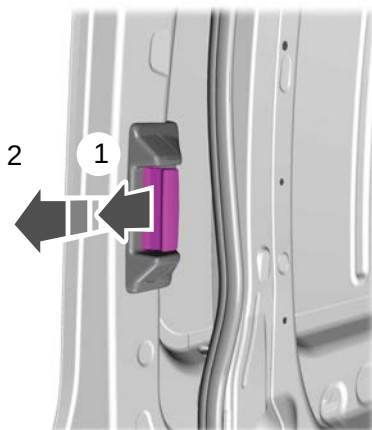


Sliding Door

Pull the exterior door handle to open the sliding door.

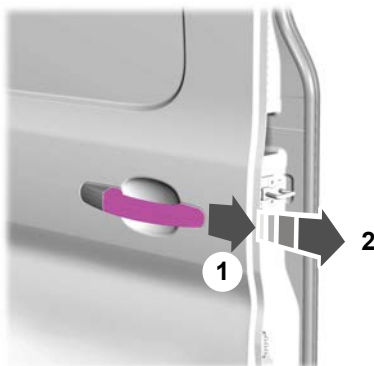
CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Pull the interior door handle in the direction shown to disengage the door stop feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

CLOSING THE SLIDING DOOR FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



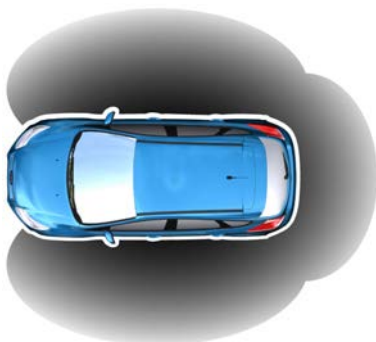
1. Pull the exterior door handle in the direction shown to disengage the door stop feature.
2. Slide the door to close.

Keyless Entry

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS



E78276

A valid passive key must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1.5 m (5 ft) from the front door handles and rear doors.

The system could not function if:

- The passive key remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **KeyFree** on or off.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can program the unlocking function so that all doors without the liftgate unlock when you touch the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle once.

If you switch **Global Unlock** off so that all doors without the liftgate unlock, the following occurs:

- If you open the driver door first, only the liftgate remains locked. You can unlock the liftgate with touching the unlock sensor on the exterior door handle twice within three seconds.
- If you open the passenger door first, all other doors and the liftgate unlock.

Note: *If you open the liftgate first, all doors remain locked in both unlocking modes.*

You can change between the unlocking modes on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Global Unlock** on or off.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors

Unlock sensors are on the back of the exterior front door handles.

Keyless Entry



Touch the unlock sensor to unlock your vehicle and disarm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash. Do not touch the lock sensor on the outer surface of the door handle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

After unlocking the doors with the unlock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can lock your vehicle. When the delay period is over you can lock the doors again, if the passive key is within the respective detection range.

Unlocking the Liftgate

With your passive key within 1 m (3 ft) of your vehicle, press the exterior liftgate release button to unlock and open the liftgate. See **Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 83).

Locking the Doors

Lock sensors are on the top of the exterior front door handles.



Touch a lock sensor once to lock your vehicle and arm the alarm. The turn signal lamps flash.

Press the sensor twice in 3 seconds to double lock your vehicle.

Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system correctly operates.

Note: Your vehicle does not automatically lock. If you do not touch a lock sensor your vehicle remains unlocked.

After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle. This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked. When the delay period is over, you can unlock the doors again, if the key is within the respective detection range.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

- If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 80). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

- If you electronically lock your vehicle with any door or the liftgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Keyless Entry

Why does the passive key not work?

- The system deactivates passive keys left inside your vehicle when you lock it. You cannot switch the ignition on using a deactivated passive key. Press the unlock button on the remote control to reactivate a passive key.

LIFTGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

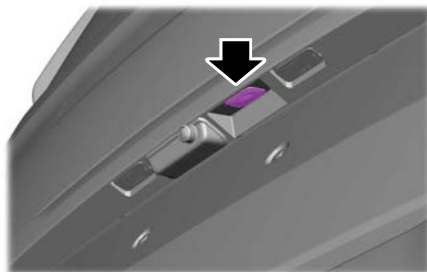
OPENING THE LIFTGATE USING THE REMOTE CONTROL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION/PUSH BUTTON START



Press the button twice within three seconds. The liftgate unlocks for 45 seconds, during which time you can open the liftgate.

OPENING THE LIFTGATE

OPENING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE - VEHICLES WITH: KEYLESS ENTRY AND PUSH BUTTON START



1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.

Note: An authorized passive key must be within 3 ft (1 m) of the liftgate.

2. Raise the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.



1. Press the control button to unlatch the liftgate.
2. Raise the liftgate.

Note: Be careful when opening or closing the liftgate in a garage or other enclosed area to avoid damaging the liftgate.

Note: Do not hang anything, for example a bike rack, from the glass or liftgate. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Note: Do not leave the liftgate open while driving. This could damage the liftgate and its components.

Liftgate

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE

CLOSING THE LIFTGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

A hanging strap is located inside the liftgate to help with closing.

Note: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent cargo from falling out.

Note: Do not touch or hang anything on the liftgate gas struts. This prevents the liftgate from closing properly.

LIFTGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

LIFTGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the liftgate is not completely closed.

LIFTGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Liftgate open	The liftgate is not completely closed. Close the liftgate.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: *The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.*

Note: *Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.*

ARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system arms your vehicle after a short period of time when you switch the power off.

DISARMING THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system disarms when you switch the power on with a correctly coded key.

Note: *You could have difficulty starting the vehicle if you have metallic objects, electronic devices or a second coded key on the same key chain.*

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The anti-theft alarm system warns you of an unauthorized entry to your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM WORK

When armed, the anti-theft alarm is triggered in any of the following ways:

- If someone opens a door, the liftgate or the hood without a correctly coded key or remote control.
- If you turn the power on without a correctly coded key.
- If the interior sensors detect movement inside your vehicle.
- If the inclination sensors detect an attempt to raise your vehicle.
- If someone disconnects your vehicle's 12V battery or the battery backup alarm.

If the anti-theft alarm is triggered, the alarm horn sounds for 30 seconds and the turn signals flash for 5 minutes.

Any further attempts to carry out one of the above sounds the alarm again.

WHAT ARE THE INTERIOR SENSORS

The interior sensors are designed to detect any movement inside your vehicle.

The interior sensors are in the overhead console.

Note: *Do not cover the interior sensors.*

WHAT ARE THE INCLINATION SENSORS

The inclination sensor is designed to detect an attempt to raise your vehicle, for example to remove a wheel or to tow it away.

Security

WHAT IS THE BATTERY BACKUP ALARM

The battery backup alarm is a standalone alarm sounder that has its own internal circuitry and a recharging battery which is charged when the engine is running. It can detect if your vehicle's 12V battery is disconnected to overcome the alarm system or if the battery backup sounder itself becomes unplugged from the vehicle's electrical harness. The alarm sounds from its own power source if that occurs.

ARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

The alarm is ready to arm when you switch your vehicle off.

Lock your vehicle with your remote control to arm the alarm.

DISARMING THE ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM

Disarm the alarm by performing any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors or luggage compartment with the remote control.
- Switch your vehicle on or start your vehicle.

ANTI-THEFT ALARM SYSTEM SETTINGS

WHAT ARE THE ALARM SECURITY LEVELS

You can select two levels of alarm security, motion sensors on and motion sensors off.

Motion Sensors On

Motion sensors on is the standard setting. In motion sensors on, all equipped sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *Do not arm the alarm with motion sensors on if passengers, animals or other moving objects are inside your vehicle.*

Motion Sensors Off

In motion sensors off, only the perimeter sensors are on when you arm the alarm.

Note: *The alarm security level will switch back to motion sensors on once the power is turned on.*

SETTING THE ALARM SECURITY LEVEL

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Press **Motion Sensors**.
5. Press a setting.

WHAT IS ASK ON EXIT

You can choose which level of security you require after you switch the ignition off.

Security

After you switch the ignition off, use the information display controls on the steering wheel to select the following:

Menu Item	Action
Alarm Turn off motion sensors? Yes No	Press the toggle button upward or downward to choose your required setting. Press the OK button.

Note: *If you do not choose a setting, the system defaults to full guard.*

2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Alarm System**.
4. Switch **Ask on Exit** on or off.

SWITCHING ASK ON EXIT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is a potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

- Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is a potential alarm problem with your vehicle.

What should I do if my vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 149).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



3. Lock the steering column.

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Remove the key from the ignition.
2. Slightly rotate the steering wheel to engage the lock.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

1. Insert the key in the ignition.
2. Turn the key to position **I**.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

Steering Wheel

LOCKING THE STEERING WHEEL - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The steering wheel lock locks shortly after you have parked your vehicle and the passive key is outside it.

Note: The steering wheel lock does not lock when the ignition is on or when your vehicle is moving.

Unlocking the Steering Wheel



WARNING: Always check that the steering is unlocked before attempting to move your vehicle.

The steering wheel lock unlocks when the system detects a valid passive key inside your vehicle. If the steering wheel lock relocks, switch the ignition on to unlock it.

Note: You may have to slightly rotate the steering wheel to assist unlocking it.

Note: Applicable to vehicles with steering wheel lock.

HEATED STEERING WHEEL



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated steering wheel if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, exhaustion or other physical conditions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, especially if the heated steering wheel is used for long periods of time.

The heated steering wheel button is on the climate controls.



Press the button to switch the heated steering wheel on and off.

Note: You can use the heated steering wheel only when the engine is running.

Note: The system uses a sensor and is designed to control the temperature of the steering wheel and to prevent it from overheating.

Note: In warm temperatures, the steering wheel quickly reaches its maximum temperature and the system reduces the current to the heating element. This could cause you to think that the system has stopped working but it has not. This is normal.

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

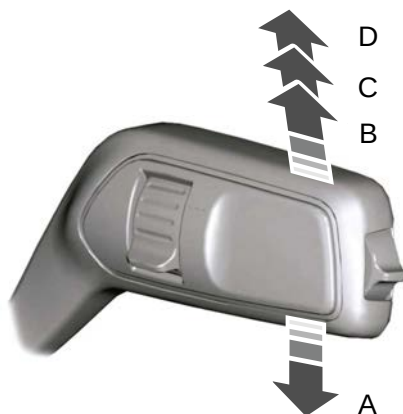
Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 94). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 94). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 95).

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between intermittent wipes may decrease.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF - DIESEL/GASOLINE

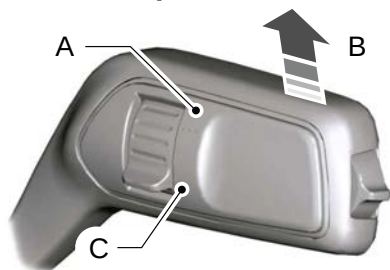


- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent Wipe.
- C Normal Wipe.
- D High-speed Wipe

Push the lever up or down to operate the windshield wipers.

Wipers and Washers

Intermittent wipe



- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.



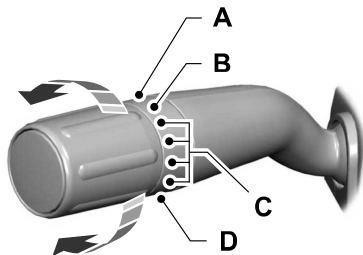
Use the rotary control.

One-wipe function



Push the button briefly to activate the one-wipe function.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



- A High-speed wipe.
- B Low-speed wipe.
- C Intermittent wipe.
- D Off.

AUTOWIPERS

WHAT ARE AUTOWIPERS

Autowipers, when turned on, automatically control the speed and frequency of the windshield wipers if the rain sensors detect moisture on the windshield.

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

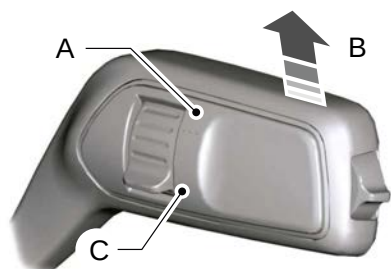
AUTOWIPERS SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rain Sensing** on or off.

Wipers and Washers

Note: When you switch the feature off, the wipers do not operate based on the rain sensor. In this case if you switch on the windshield wipers to the intermittent wipe position with the feature off, the wipers use the wipe speed set by the rotary control.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR - DIESEL/ GASOLINE



- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers.

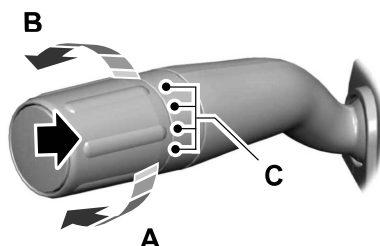
When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

When you switch autowipers off, the wipers operate in intermittent mode.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF THE RAIN SENSOR - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



- A Low sensitivity.
- B High sensitivity.
- C Intermittent wipe/Autowipers.

Use the rotary control to set the rain sensor sensitivity.

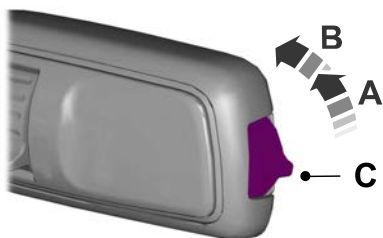
Note: Use intermittent wipe positions to adjust the rain sensor sensitivity. See **Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off** (page 92).

When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield.

When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Wipers and Washers

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF - DIESEL/GASOLINE



- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

Rotate the control to adjust the wipe interval.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



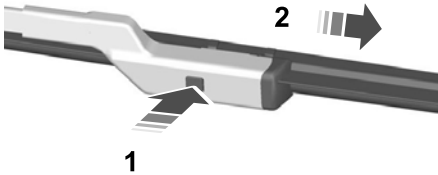
- A Rear window wiper off.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Continuous wipe.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

Make sure your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

Wipers and Washers

Note: Do not manually move the wiper arms to service position, doing so may damage the wiper motor. To place the wiper arms in a service position, switch your vehicle on in accessory mode, switch on the wipers and switch your vehicle off when the wipers are at their highest position.



1. Lift the wiper arm and then press the wiper blade locking button.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

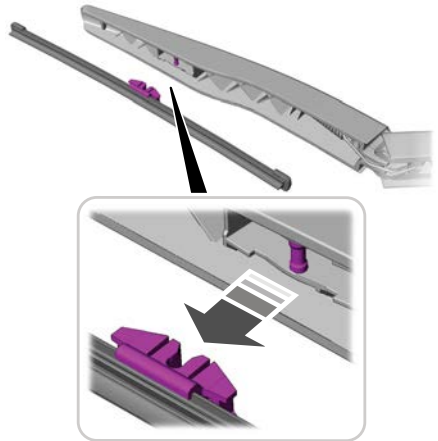
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES

1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Disengage the wiper blade from the wiper arm.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Wipers and Washers

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER - DIESEL/GASOLINE



Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



Press and hold the button at the end of the lever to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 96).

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. When you switch it off the wipers finish the current washer request.

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER - DIESEL/GASOLINE



Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wiper operates for a short time.

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Wipers and Washers

USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



Rotate the control to the top or bottom position and hold it to operate the rear window washer.

ADDING WASHER FLUID

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the washer fluid reservoir cap.
3. Add washer fluid that meets our specification. See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 97).
4. Install the washer fluid reservoir cap.

Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Screen Wash - Winter Premium 55 PU7J-19C544-**	WSS-M8B18-A2

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

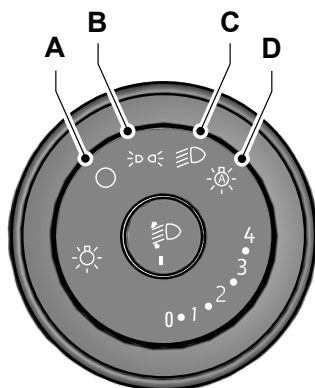
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

- The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 94). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 94). See **Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades** (page 95).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL - VEHICLES BUILT FROM: 08/2026

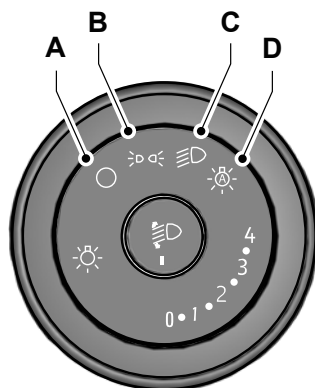


- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps on.
- C Headlamps on.
- D Autolamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: Rotate the lighting control twice to turn the lamps off if a display message appears in the instrument cluster.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL - VEHICLES BUILT UP TO: 08/2026



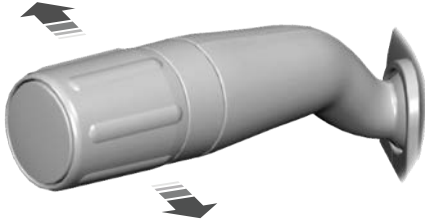
- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps and license plate lamps on.
- C Headlamps on.
- D Autolamps on.

Rotate the control to make a selection.

Exterior Lighting

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

Note: Continuous activation only with headlamps on.

SWITCHING HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY ON AND OFF

To switch headlamp exit delay on, pull the turn signal lever toward you when the headlamps are off and the ignition is off. A short tone sounds when the system is on.

To switch headlamp exit delay off, pull the turn signal lever toward you again or switch your vehicle on.

Note: The headlamps turn off after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door closes.

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD

The headlamps are designed to support the left or right-hand side driving. You do not need to take any action.

ADJUSTING THE LEVEL OF THE HEADLAMPS



WARNING: Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.



WARNING: The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

You can adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to the vehicle load.



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control in accordance with your vehicle load to prevent you from distracting other road users when the headlamps are on.

Exterior Lighting

3. Press to close the control.

Note: Set the control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded.

Note: Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m (115–328 ft) of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

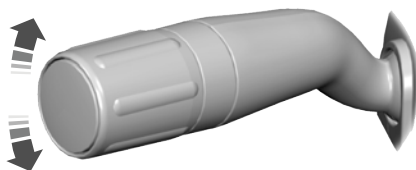
Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

SWITCHING THE PARKING LAMPS ON AND OFF

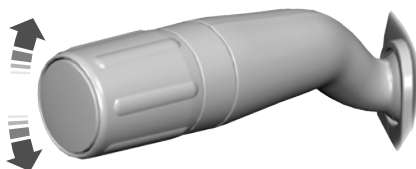
To switch both sides on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps position.
3. Set the lighting control to the off position to switch the parking lamps off.

Note: Parking lamps could turn off to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

To switch one side on or off:

1. Switch the ignition off.



2.



Push the lever up or down to switch the parking lamps on.

3. Move the lever back to a neutral position to switch the lamps off.

Exterior Lighting

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES BUILT UP TO: 08/2026



WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or the front fog lamps.

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES BUILT FROM: 08/2026

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or the front fog lamps.

USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

2.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Note: The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: You can only switch the rear fog lamps on when the low beam headlamps or the front fog lamps are on.

2.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the rear fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

Exterior Lighting

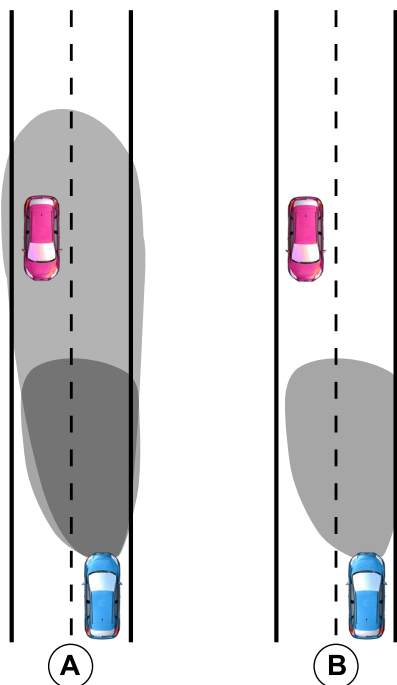
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 480). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

Exterior Lighting



WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.



WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- You switch the rear fog lamps on.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

Note: *The deactivation speed may be lower on curves.*

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Exterior**.
5. Switch **Auto High Beam** on or off.

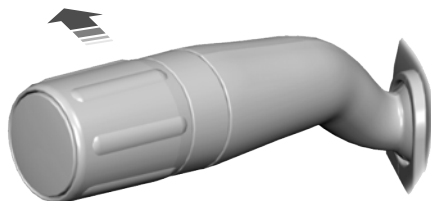
AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates white to confirm when the system is ready to assist. Illuminates blue when the high beam is activated.

Exterior Lighting

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch between high beam and low beam.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

EXTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the exterior lamps?

- Exterior lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur

when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist or small droplets without streak marks is normal condensation. This may occur under certain environmental conditions and will clear on its own.

Exterior Lighting

How long does it take for the acceptable condensation to clear?

- Clearing time may vary depending on the outside temperature and environment, the drive duration or speed.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- Standing water or a water puddle inside the lamp. Condensation with drip marks present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

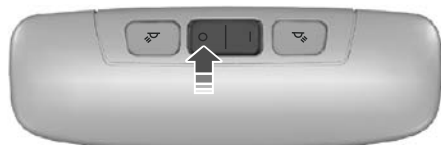
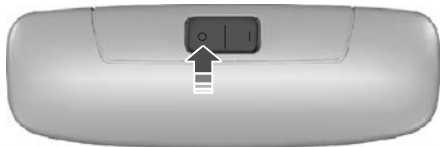
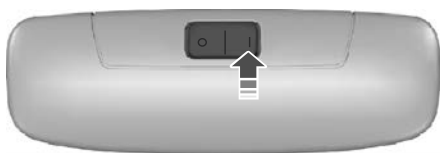
- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Interior Lighting

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT INTERIOR LAMP

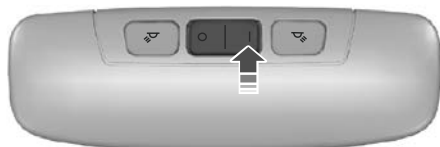


SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

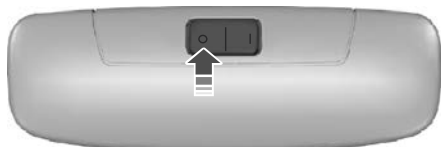
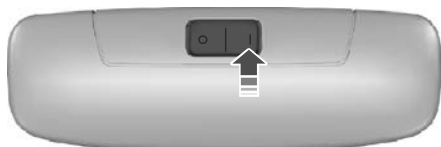


E112208

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: FRONT INTERIOR LAMP WITH MAP READING LAMPS



SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



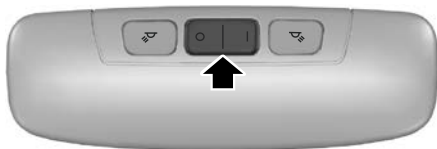
Interior Lighting

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



E293629

When you set the switch to the middle position, the interior lamps turn on if:

- You open any door.
- You press the unlock button on the remote control.
- You switch the ignition off.

Note: If you switch the ignition off, the interior lamps could turn off after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: ONE-TOUCH OPEN DRIVER WINDOW



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

Driver Side One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Driver Side One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Press or lift again to stop the window.

Resetting Driver Side One-Touch Close

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed.
2. Release the window control switch.
3. Lift the window control switch for one more second.
4. Release the window control switch.
5. Lift the window control switch again for one more second.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: ONE-TOUCH OPEN AND CLOSE FRONT WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Windows



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If an obstruction is detected, release the switch and reverse the window immediately. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not leave a key or remote control unattended in the vehicle. Children or pets could operate the power windows and could become trapped in a closing window. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



Press the window control switch to open the window. Lift the window control switch to close the window.

Note: The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open

Fully press the window control switch and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the window control switch and release it. Lift again or press it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Close the window.
2. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
3. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.
4. Press and hold the window control switch until the window is fully open. Keep the window control switch pressed for a few seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control switch held for a few seconds.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING AND CLOSING

You can use the remote control to operate the windows with the ignition off.

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the front windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Windows

Note: You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Open** on or off.

USING GLOBAL CLOSING



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify that they are free of obstructions and make sure children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Press and hold the lock button on the remote control.
2. Release the button when the windows and moonroof start to close.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global closing.

Note: Bounce-back is on during global closing. See **What Is Window Bounce-Back** (page 111).

Note: Depending on the built date of your vehicle, this feature may not be available.

SWITCHING GLOBAL CLOSING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Close** on or off.

Note: Depending on the built date of your vehicle, this feature may not be available.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window twice until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Close the window a third time to the point of resistance. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.

Note: If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RESETTING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: Bounce-back is off until you reset the memory. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Lift and hold the window control switch until the window is fully closed.

Windows

2. Release the switch.
3. Lift the switch again for one more second.
4. Release the switch.
5. Lift the switch again for one more second.

Note: Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.

Note: If the battery has been disconnected, you must reset the bounce-back memory.

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



WARNING: When children and pets are in the rear seat, use the power window lockout button to prevent accidental operation of the power windows.



Press the window control switch to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE REAR WINDOWS

Opening the Rear Windows



1. Pull the catch and push the window open.

Closing the Rear Windows

1. Pull the window to close and push the catch. Make sure the catch engages.

Note: There is an audible click when the catch engages.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

MANUALLY DIMMING THE INTERIOR MIRROR

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R).

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

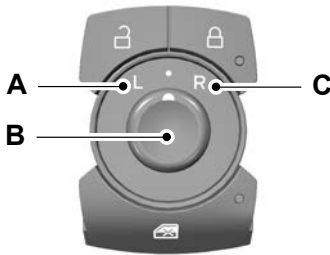
Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror position.
- B Mirror adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror position.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: AUTO FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

The exterior mirrors fold when you lock your vehicle and unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: This feature requires you to switch the exterior mirrors auto-fold on.



For tight parking conditions, press the control switch to fold the mirrors.

Press the control switch again to unfold the mirrors.

Note: Do not stop the mirrors midway through their movement. Wait until the mirrors stop moving and press the control switch again.

The left and right-hand mirrors move at different rates. For example, one mirror may stop while the other one continues to move. This is normal.

If you press the control switch to fold in the mirrors with auto-fold on, the mirrors do not unfold when you unlock your vehicle.

Note: The power folding mirrors operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Note: If you fold and unfold the mirrors several times within one minute, the power fold function may turn off to protect the motors from overheating.

Switching Auto-fold On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Mirrors**.
4. Switch **Autofold** on and off.

Loose, Noisy or Intermittently Working Mirrors

If you manually fold the power folding mirrors, they may not work properly even after you reposition them. Reset the mirrors if:

- They vibrate when you drive.
- They feel loose.
- They do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.
- One of the mirrors is not in its normal driving position.
- The mirrors are intermittently working.

Exterior Mirrors

To reset the power fold feature, use the power folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors. You may hear a loud noise as you reset the power folding mirrors. This sound is normal. Operate the power folding mirrors an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

If the above process does not help you to fix the mirror, perform the following steps.

1. Fold or retract both mirrors manually.
2. Using the power folding control switch, operate the mirrors until you hear an audible click.
3. Operate the power folding an additional 3 to 4 times to synchronize the mirrors.

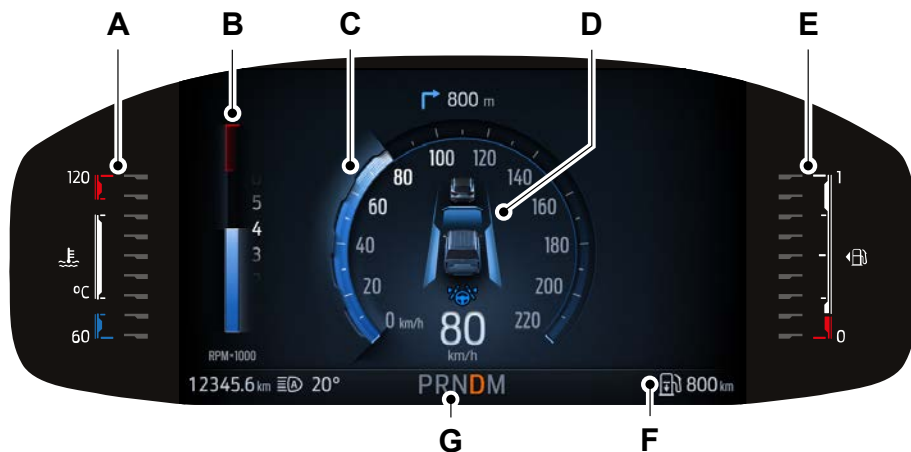
Repeat this process as needed each time you manually fold the mirrors.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS - VEHICLES WITH: MANUAL FOLD EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Instrument Cluster

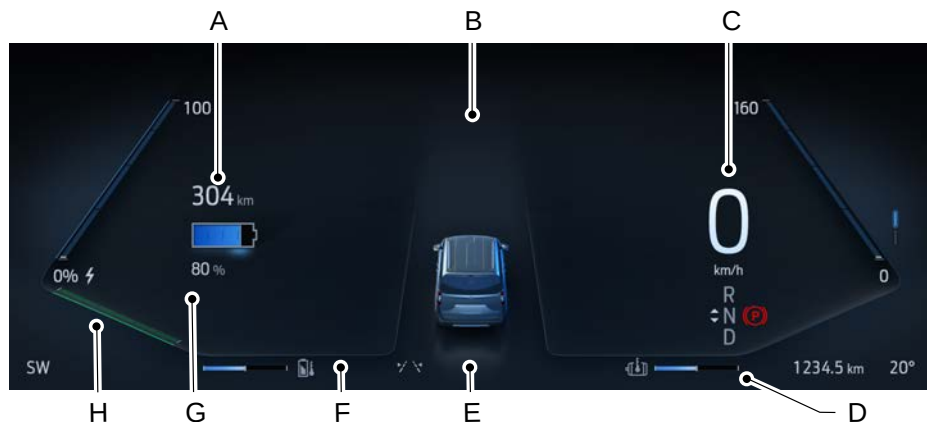
INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - DIESEL/GASOLINE



- A Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- B Tachometer.
- C Speedometer.
- D Instrument cluster display.
- E Fuel gauge.
- F Distance to empty.
- G Information bar.

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



- A Vehicle driving range.
- B Instrument cluster display.
- C Speedometer.
- D Electric motor temperature gauge.
- E Information bar.
- F High voltage battery temperature gauge.
- G Battery state of charge.
- H Power gauge.

TACHOMETER - DIESEL/ GASOLINE

Indicates the rotational speed of the engine to the driver at any given moment.

Instrument Cluster

POWER GAUGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The Power Gauge displays power to the wheels when accelerating or maintaining speed. When slowing down by lifting your foot off the accelerator pedal or pressing the brake, the gauge displays the power captured by the regenerative braking system and returned to the high voltage battery.

What is Power Availability Gauge

Displays total available vehicle power. Available power may be limited due to temperature or low battery state of charge. See **Maximizing Your Driving Range** (page 370).

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the speed of the vehicle to the driver at any given moment.

FUEL GAUGE - DIESEL/ GASOLINE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 80 km (50 mi), 40 km (25 mi), 20 km (10 mi) and 0 km (0 mi).

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

VEHICLE RANGE DISPLAY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Displays the approximate range your vehicle can travel with the energy currently onboard. Estimates vary based on the energy used when driving.

Changes in driving pattern can cause the values to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

The amount of energy being used when driving is affected by such as:

- Mild or aggressive acceleration or braking.
- Your vehicle's speed.
- Use of accessories, such as climate control.
- Ambient temperature and weather conditions.
- Driving in a city or on a highway.

Instrument Cluster

- Driving on hilly road conditions.
- Towing.

Note: *It is normal for vehicle range estimates to vary due to changes in average energy usage. This could cause different range estimates each time you fully charge your battery or fill your tank.*

Note: *Electric range is lower in cold temperatures due to reduced energy capacity in the high voltage battery. Set a departure time and cabin temperature to maintain battery temperature for best range and performance. See **Charging Settings** (page 238).*

Gasoline Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank.

Electric Range

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on electric power only with the engine off.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY TEMPERATURE GAUGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Displays the high voltage battery temperature.

When the battery temperature is outside the normal range, vehicle performance could be reduced and a corresponding message could display.

- When the temperature is too cold, continue driving to warm the system and improve performance.
- When the temperature is too hot, performance could be reduced to cool the system.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE - DIESEL/GASOLINE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

ELECTRIC MOTOR TEMPERATURE GAUGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Displays electric motor temperature.

When the electric motor temperature is outside the normal range, vehicle performance could be reduced and a corresponding message could display.

- When the temperature is too cold, continue driving to warm the system and improve performance.
- When the temperature is too hot, performance could be reduced to cool the system.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

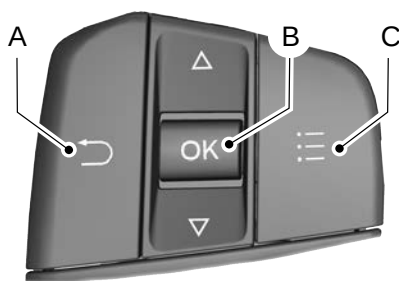
Instrument Cluster Display

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Return button.
- B OK button.
- C Menu button.

Return Button

Press to go back or exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection.

Toggle Buttons

Press the toggle up or down button to scroll through menu items.

Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicate a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - DIESEL/GASOLINE

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Fuel
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip Computer
Audio
Phone
Navigation
Settings

Instrument Cluster Display

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items can appear different or not at all.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Trip/Energy
Status Information
Vehicle Maintenance
Trip Computer
Audio
Navigation
Phone
Settings

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - DIESEL/GASOLINE

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the **OK** button.

Note: The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.

Configure MyView
Power Distribution
Trailer Light Status
Battery Charge
Now Playing
Navigation
Trip Computer 1
Trip Computer 2
This Trip
Fuel Economy
Eco Coach
Tyre Pressure

Note: Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.

Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select **Right Gauge**.
5. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

Instrument Cluster Display

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
5. Press the **OK** button.

Note: The amount of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear, you must deselect screens from the menu.

MyView
Performance gauges
Hybrid Gauge
Battery Charge
Trailer Light Status
Navigation
Trip Computer 1
Trip Computer 2
This Trip
Fuel Economy
Eco Behaviour
EV Coach
Tyre Pressure

Note: Some options may appear slightly different or not at all if items are optional.

Configuring Gauges

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select a setting and press the **OK** button.

FUEL ECONOMY DISPLAY - DIESEL/GASOLINE

An instant fuel economy gauge is provided along with average fuel economy. Average fuel economy is continuously averaged since the last reset.

Note: Press and hold the **OK** button on the controls on the steering wheel to reset your average fuel economy.

ELECTRIC ECONOMY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

This screen shows your average driving distance per kilowatt-hour of electricity used on your plug-in hybrid vehicle. The value is calculated only when your available electric range is being used and the gasoline engine is off.

Distance per full charge is also shown. This is an estimate of the electric range you would have if you plugged in and fully charged your vehicle right now. The higher your electric economy, the higher your distance per full charge.

Your electric economy is affected by your driving style and route, climate control use, outside temperature and other factors. Best economy is achieved with mild to moderate acceleration and braking, moderate speeds and low climate control usage.

Instrument Cluster Display

Note: *Electric economy is a selectable screen. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 121). See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 122).*

BATTERY CHARGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Displays a high voltage battery gauge and an estimate of available electric driving range. The high voltage battery gauge displays the total amount of charge associated with your available electric only driving range. A full fill represents the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge (plugging your vehicle in). When the fill reaches empty the powertrain system will automatically switch to hybrid operation.

BRAKE COACH - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The brake coach appears after your vehicle has come to a stop. It coaches you to brake in a manner that maximizes the amount of energy returned through the regenerative braking system.

The percent displayed indicates the regenerative braking efficiency, with 100% representing the maximum amount of energy recovered.

Note: *While regenerative braking works in all drive modes, brake coach display may not be available in all drive modes.*

You can switch brake coach on or off in the settings menu. See **Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu** (page 121).

TRIP SUMMARY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The trip summary displays upon shutting off your vehicle. The values are cumulative since you last started your vehicle.

The information shown is the same as the This Trip screen. See **Trip Data** (page 125).

VEHICLE CHARGING STATUS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The vehicle charge status displays when you switch off your vehicle or when you switch on your vehicle while being plugged in. Charging status includes the charge start time for scheduled charging or charge end time while charging. You can modify your charge settings through the touchscreen. See **Charging Your Vehicle** (page 218).

Personalized Settings

CHANGING THE LANGUAGE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Language**.
4. Press a setting.

Note: *Available languages vary by region.*

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Measurement Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Temperature unit**.
4. Press a setting.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Tyre Pressure Unit**.
4. Press a setting.

Trip Computer - Diesel/Gasoline

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

Note: *This trip is a selectable screen. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 125).*

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **MyView**.
3. Select **Configure MyView**.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display** (page 121).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Use the instrument cluster display controls to navigate the home screen.
2. Select the trip screen you want to reset.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TRIP DATA

Trip 1 and 2

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy and total trip distance traveled. For hybrid vehicles, the trip also shows the distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off.

Note: *Trip 1 and 2 are selectable screens. See **Accessing the Trip Computer** (page 125).*

This Trip

Provides trip timer, trip average fuel economy, total trip distance traveled, and distance traveled on electric power only with the engine off. If the gasoline engine has not turned on during the trip then trip average fuel economy is not shown. This Trip resets each time you start your vehicle.

Trip Computer - Battery Electric Vehicle

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Trip/Energy**.
3. Select **Trip Computer 1** or **Trip Computer 2**.
4. Use the control on the steering wheel to navigate the menu. See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 120).

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Trip Computer**.
3. Select **Trip Computer 1** or **Trip Computer 2**.
4. Select **Reset Individual Values**.
5. Select **Reset All Values**.
6. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Trip Computer**.
3. Select **Trip Computer 1** or **Trip Computer 2**.
4. Select **Reset Individual Values**.
5. Select the value you want to reset.
6. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

CONFIGURING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Trip Computer**.
3. Select **Trip Computer 1** or **Trip Computer 2**.
4. Select **Configure View**.
5. Select the value you want to configure.
6. Press the **OK** button.

TRIP DATA

Trip data includes distance, time and energy economy. Better energy economy, meaning greater efficiency or lower consumption, results in increased driving range.

Where Did My Energy Go

Displays a breakdown of energy consumption for your trip.

- **Climate Use** – This includes energy used by your vehicle's high voltage climate control components such as the electric A/C compressor and the electric heater.
- **Driving and Route** – This includes energy used to propel your vehicle based on your driving style and route. Your driving style includes how fast you drive and whether your acceleration and braking is mild or aggressive. Your route includes factors such as the amount of city or highway driving and road grades.

Trip Computer - Battery Electric Vehicle

- Accessories – This includes energy used for low voltage accessories such as climate system fans, heated seats and lighting.
- Exterior Temperature – This includes energy losses due to outside temperature and other conditions which reduce vehicle system efficiency.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

USING REMOTE START - DIESEL/GASOLINE



WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a preset temperature.

Follow the instructions in the vehicle app to start and stop your vehicle.

Note: *The vehicle app must be paired with your vehicle to remotely start using the app.*

When you successfully remote start your vehicle:

- The vehicle doors lock.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.
- The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: *You cannot adjust any comfort settings until you switch your vehicle on from inside your vehicle.*

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Remote start is not enabled.
- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is already on.

Note: *Do not use remote start if your fuel level is low.*

Note: *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you have to switch your vehicle on and off before you can use remote start again.*

USING REMOTE START - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged in the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. Power outlets power up during remote start.

The system allows you to remotely start your vehicle to heat or cool the interior to a preset temperature.

Follow the instructions in the vehicle app to start and stop your vehicle.

Note: *The vehicle app must be paired with your vehicle to remotely start using the app.*

When you successfully remote start your vehicle:

- The vehicle doors lock.
- The turn signal lamps flash twice.
- The parking lamps turn on when the vehicle is running.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

- The vehicle remains secured when you have remotely started the vehicle. A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch your vehicle on and drive your vehicle.
- All other vehicle systems remain off when you have remotely started the vehicle.

The horn sounds if the system fails to start.

Note: *You cannot adjust any comfort settings until you switch your vehicle on from inside your vehicle.*

Remote start does not work under the following conditions:

- Remote start is not enabled.
- The alarm horn is sounding.
- The hood is open.
- The transmission is not in park (P).
- Your vehicle is already on.
- The vehicle battery is below the minimum operating voltage.

Note: *A maximum of two remote starts are allowed. After that you have to switch your vehicle on and off before you can use remote start again.*

ENABLING REMOTE START

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Switch **Remote Start** on or off.

Note: *To remote start with Ford app, make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Connecting the Ford App to the Modem** (page 479).*

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: *If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).*

Note: *If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Note: *When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.*

Heated Seat Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: *If you switch the heated seat settings to **Auto**, the heated seats turn on during cold weather.*

Note: *You cannot adjust the heated seat settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.*

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

Remote Start - Automatic Transmission

2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press a setting.

REMOTE START SETTINGS - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED STEERING WHEEL

Climate Control Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Climate Control**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you select **Auto**, the system attempts to heat or cool the interior to 22°C (72°F).

Note: If you select **Last Settings**, the system remembers the last used settings.

Note: You cannot adjust the climate control settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Note: When you switch the ignition on, the climate control system returns to the last used settings.

Heated Seat and Steering Wheel Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Seats and Steering Wheel**.
5. Press a setting.

Note: If you switch the heated seat and steering wheel settings to **Auto**, the heated seats and steering wheel turn on during cold weather.

Note: You cannot adjust the heated seat and steering wheel settings when you have remotely started the vehicle.

Setting the Remote Start Duration

You can set a duration for Remote Start to run.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Press **Remote Start Setup**.
4. Press **Duration**.
5. Press a setting.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: *Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.*

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: *You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.*

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 144).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Slide the temperature control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.
- 5. Close the instrument panel air vents.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest speed setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.
3. Direct air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Adjust the blower motor speed to the center setting.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.
3. Direct air to the instrument panel air vents.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Direct air to the instrument panel and windshield air vents.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer.
3. Adjust the blower motor speed to the highest setting.
4. Direct air toward the side windows.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 144).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Slide the temperature control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press **+** or **-** to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Manual Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Manual Temperature Control

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 144).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Manual Temperature Control

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Slide the temperature control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press **+** or **-** to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/ Manual Temperature Control

- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
 - If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: *Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.*

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: *Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.*

Note: *To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.*

SWITCHING DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch the windshield air vents on.



Make sure that the instrument panel air vents are switched off.



Make sure that the footwell air vents are switched off.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: *You can also press the button on the instrument panel to switch the maximum defrost on or off.*

Note: *To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.*

Note: *The heated rear window and air conditioning also turn on when you select maximum defrost.*

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Note: In certain conditions, for example, cold weather, maximum cooling may not activate or could run slow when switched on. This helps reduce power consumption from the battery.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRIC HEATER ON AND OFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button to switch the electric heater on or off.

Note: The default setting is on.

Note: Disabling the system helps maximize your driving range.

Note: The system does not work in some climate control modes.

Note: This button does not switch off the climate control system.

Note: In certain conditions, for example warm weather, the system could not activate or could run with reduced performance when switched on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED WINDSHIELD ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the windshield of thin ice and fog. The heated windshield turns off after a short period of time.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF - VEHICLES BUILT FROM: 12/ 2024



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press the button to set the blower motor speed.



Slide the control to set the blower motor speed.

Note: You can press + or - to set the blower motor speed.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITHOUT: HEATED REAR WINDOW



Press the button.

SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: HEATED REAR WINDOW

When you switch the heated rear window on, the heated exterior mirrors turn on. See **Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off** (page 144).

Note: Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or adjust the mirror glass when it is frozen in place.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products. The vehicle warranty may not cover damage caused to the mirror housing or glass.

Note: The engine must be running or your vehicle must be ready to drive to switch the system on.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE

Press the temperature control to access the temperature settings.



Slide the control to set the temperature.

Note: You can press + or - to set the temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

General Hints

- Use of the climate system will reduce your vehicles driving range. Conserve battery charge by using climate control features when necessary.
- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. The blower motor speed may reduce until the air warms.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Center Display Screen/ Automatic Temperature Control

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

Press **MAX A/C**.

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C (72°F) as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Interior Air Quality

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

LOCATING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

You can locate the cabin air filter behind the glove box.

REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

To maintain the high performance of the climate control system and air quality, replace the filter at regular intervals.

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Note: *Using an aftermarket cabin air filter could reduce cabin air filtration and climate control performance.*

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.



WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far. This can cause an occupant to slide under the seatbelt in the event of a sudden stop or crash. Failure to follow this instruction can result in personal injury or death.

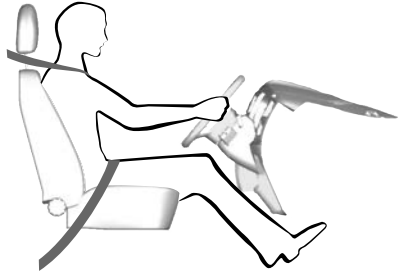


WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm (10 in) between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

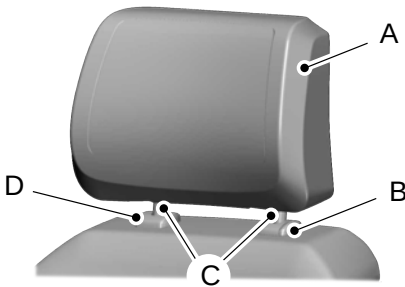
Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- C Two steel stems.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button -may be equipped.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Raising the Head Restraints

1. Pull the head restraint upward.
2. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

Lowering the Head Restraints

1. Press and hold the locking button.
2. Push the head restraint downward.
3. Make sure that the head restraint locks into place.

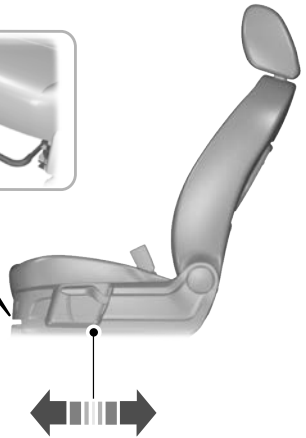
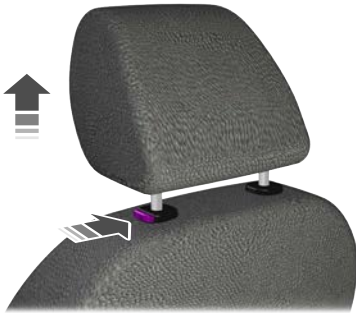
Front Seats

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

1. Recline the seat backrest so that there is enough room for you to remove the head restraint.



ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

2. Press the locking button and remove the head restraint.

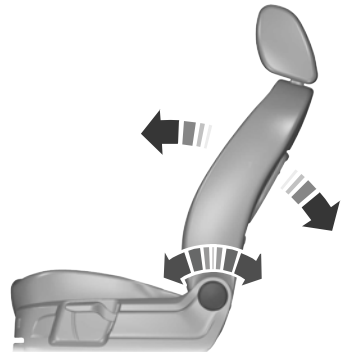
INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD

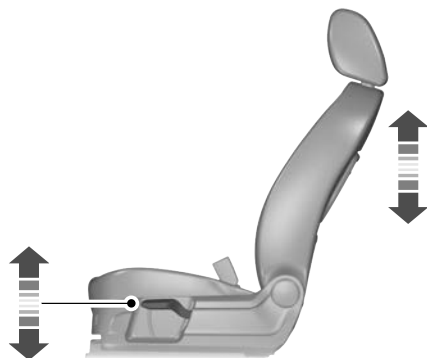


WARNING: Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.



Front Seats

ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



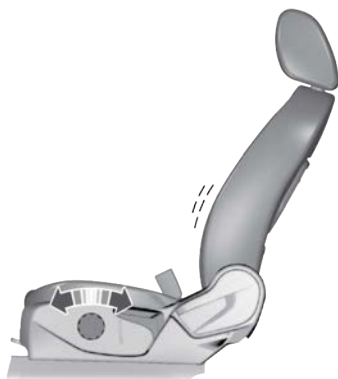
FOLDING THE PASSENGER SEAT



WARNING: When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

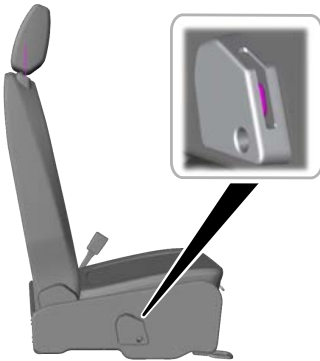
Note: When folding the seat backrest, make sure that the seatbelt buckles are not trapped behind the seat.

ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



1. If the seat is unoccupied pull the strap next to the head restraint to fold the seat backrest.
2. Tilt the head restraint forward while folding the seat backrest.

Front Seats



3. The indicator on the outer side of the seat shows if the seat is locked and fully folded.



UNFOLDING THE PASSENGER SEAT



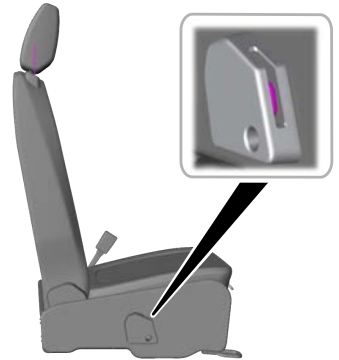
WARNING: When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Make sure that the seats and the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

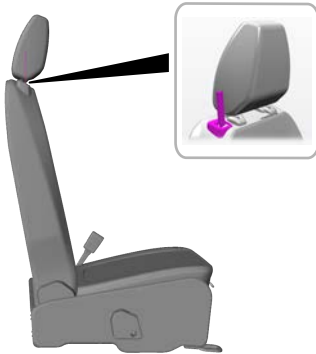
Note: When unfolding the seat backrest, make sure that the seatbelt buckles are not trapped behind the seat.

1. Pull the strap next to the head restraint and lift the seat backrest until it latches in the upright position.
2. Pull the strap at the front of the seat and lift the seat cushion.



3. The indicator on the outer side of the seat shows if the seat cushion is locked.

Front Seats



WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.
- Turn on the seat heater if the seats are folded.

4. The indicator at the strap next to the head restraint shows if the seat backrest is locked.

HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF - DIESEL/GASOLINE

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: Based on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The vehicle must be on to use this feature.

Front Seats



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

Note: *Based on your remote start settings, the heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

Automatic Heated Seats

When you switch on the auto setting, the heated seats switch on to match your climate control setting.

Rear Seats - Kombi

REAR SEAT PRECAUTIONS

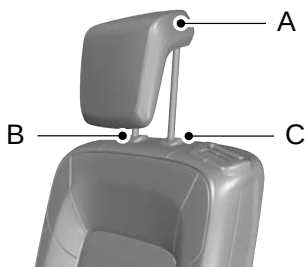


WARNING: In some markets, a four-seat vehicle is available. In these vehicles, the center rear position has a raised cushion, does not have a seatbelt and is not a designated seating position. Do not let passengers sit there.

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

Rear Seat Head Restraints



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Guide sleeve.
- C Locking guide sleeve.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head.

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the unlock and remove button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

REMOVING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and remove button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

1. Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

Rear Seats - Kombi

FOLDING THE SEATS



WARNING: Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: When folding the seat backrest down, take care not to get your fingers caught in the mechanism.



WARNING: While folding the rear backrest, always make sure that no people, animals or items are in the path.



WARNING: To prevent possible damage to the seat or seatbelts, make sure that the seatbelts are not fastened before folding the seatback.



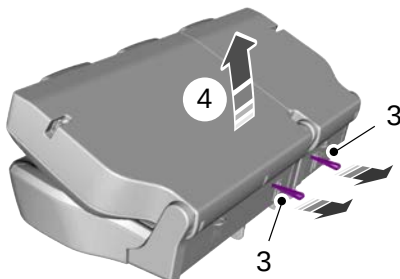
WARNING: While driving, unsecured objects on a folded seat may become projectiles in a sudden stop or crash.

Note: Fully lower the head restraint when folding the seats. See **Adjusting the Head Restraint** (page 156).

Note: When folding the seat backrest, make sure that the seatbelt buckles are not trapped behind the seat.



1. Press the button to release the seatback.
2. Fold the seatback down.



3. Pull the strap on the rear of the seatback.
4. Raise the seat to the vertical position.

Rear Seats - Kombi

UNFOLDING THE SEATS

Note: When unfolding the seat backrest, make sure that the seatbelt buckles are not trapped behind the seat.

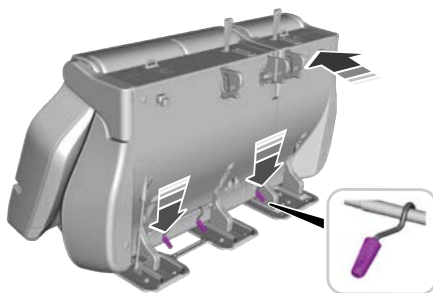


You can also fold just one part of the rear seat.

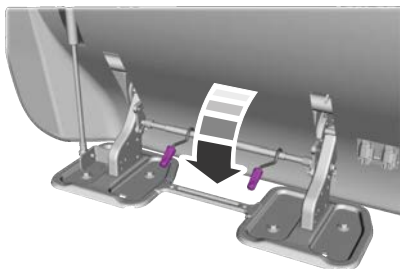


You can tumble the whole rear seat or just one part of it.

Note: Rear row occupants cannot sit next to a seat in the same row that has the seatback in the folded or tumbled position. Sharp edges can cause injury.



1. To return the seat to the floor, push the seat slightly while pressing the lever.



2. Rotate the seat down until it latches to the floor.
3. To return the seatback to the upright position, lift the seatback toward the rear of the vehicle until it locks.

Rear Occupant Alert System

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off. The notifications can be in the form of warnings inside the vehicle and sounding of the horn if activated for a short period of time.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is selected, the system monitors only the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

When **Child Seat Installed** is not selected, the system monitors the rear seatbelt buckle activity and the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the touchscreen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

If you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding and driver door open to close, the horn sounds for a short period of time.

Note: *Horn sounds only when the **Rear Occupant Alert** is set to **Alert & Horn**. If you change the setting, then there is no horn sound.*

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors the activity of the buckle on the rear seatbelt and the opening and closing of the rear doors.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Rear Occupant Alert System

Note: It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM SETTINGS

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press Vehicle.
3. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
4. Select Alert & Horn or Alert Only or Off.

Note: The default setting is Alert Only.

Note: If you choose Alert Only, the horn does not sound even when the alert conditions are met.

Note: Performing a vehicle system reset causes the system to switch on again.

Switching Child Seat Installed On and Off

When the system is switched on, it monitors the opening and closing of the rear doors to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press Vehicle.
3. Press Rear Occupant Alert.
4. Switch Child Seat Installed yes or no.

Note: The default setting is on.

Switch the system on when the child restraint is mounted on any of the following:

- Forward facing seat.
- Rear facing seat.
- Toddler in a latch system baby seat.

Switch the system off when the child is using any of the following:

- Seatbelt.
- Booster seat.

Semiannual Reminder

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: The graphic may be different for your vehicle.

Rear Occupant Alert System

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

The first audible warning is an alert tone within the vehicle, which sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

The second audible warning is from the horn. It sounds when you do not open a rear door within a short period of time of the message appearing in the center display, the first audible warning sounding, and driver door open to close. The warning sounds for a short period of time.

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: These USB ports can also charge devices.

Note: Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.

Note: We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.

Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- On the rearview mirror bracket.
- Behind the first row seats.
- On the rear interior trim.
- In the cargo area.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

1. Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.
2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.



Press the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

USB Ports

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices that require up to the rating on the outlet cover.

Note: *The total power delivered is divided if more than one outlet is used.*

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

Note: *This feature has a maximum output of 400 watts when the vehicle is in park (P).*

Note: *While in drive (D), the maximum outlet output is 300 watts.*

POWER OUTLET LIMITATIONS

Devices could exceed the power rating shown the device label when plugged in. Unplug the device and switch the ignition on and off to reset the system.

Do not use the power outlet for these types of electric devices:

- Cathode ray tube type televisions.
- Motor loads, for example vacuum cleaners, electric saws and other electric power tools, or compressor-driven refrigerators.

- Measuring devices which process precise data, for example medical equipment or measuring equipment.
- Other appliances requiring an extremely stable power supply, for example microcomputer-controlled electric blankets or touch sensor lamps.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet could be located on either the driver's or the passenger's seat base.



POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220-240V Power Outlet

Indicator Status	Description
On	The power outlet is on.
Off	The power outlet is off.
Flashing	The power outlet is in fault mode.

Note: Due to different technologies used on its construction, some devices may exceed the capacity shown on its label when they are initially plugged in.

Note: The power outlet temporarily turns off power when in fault mode if the device exceeds the Watt limit. Unplug your device and switch the ignition off. Open the driver door to reset the power outlet. Switch the ignition back on and make sure the indicator light remains on. Do not plug your device back in if it exceeds the maximum outlet output.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not plug electrical devices into the power outlets that exceed the maximum power rating. Incorrect use of the power outlets can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or personal injury.



WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 15 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 180 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets could be in the following locations:

- On the instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- Inside the cargo area.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.



WARNING: Remove all metal objects like coins and keys from the charging surface and remove any metal objects attached to your mobile phone before placing the device on the charging surface. Some mobile devices or cases may attract metal objects. Metal objects on the charging surface or attached to the phone may become hot while charging is active. If an object is left on or near the charging surface or attached to the phone while the device is charging, let the objects cool before removing to prevent personal injury.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.
- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

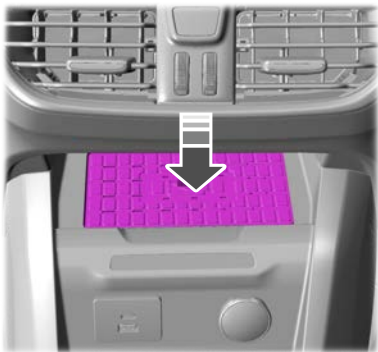
Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console.

Wireless Accessory Charger



CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running or when the touchscreen is on.



Displays on the status bar, on the touchscreen when wireless charging is in progress.



Displays on the status bar, on the touchscreen when wireless charging has been interrupted.

Note: The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.

Note: Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. You should verify charging functionality with your specific devices in-vehicle.

Note: The use of streaming services and other applications while the device is charging can decrease charging efficiency.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Wireless Charger Active	Displays when wireless charging has started.
Charging stopped Phone misaligned or object detected between phone and charger. Correct the condition to resume charging.	Displays when wireless charging has stopped. Remove objects from the charging surface and place phone on center of charging surface.

Storage

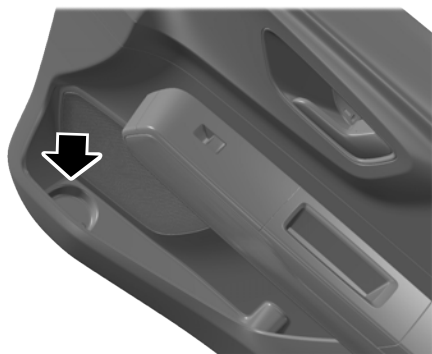
BOTTLE HOLDERS

BOTTLE HOLDER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not place glass objects in the bottle holder. Items could become loose during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

LOCATING THE BOTTLE HOLDERS



CUP HOLDERS

CUP HOLDER PRECAUTIONS

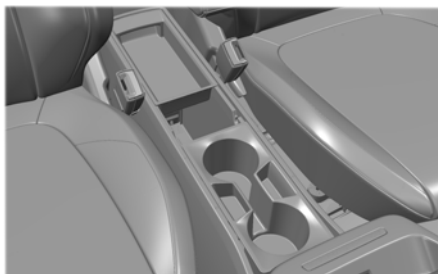
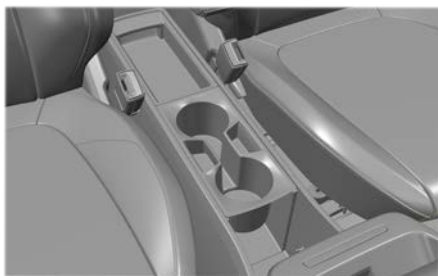
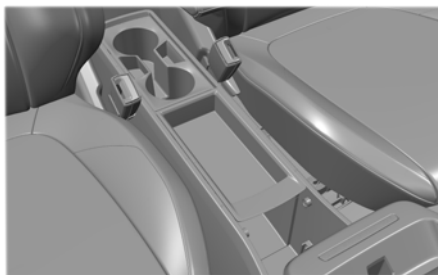


WARNING: Use caution when stowing items or hot drinks in the cup holders. Items could become loose or spill during hard braking, acceleration or crashes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

LOCATING THE CUP HOLDERS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Center Console

You can insert the cup holder and the trinket tray as one of the three options below.



Storage

Note: Make sure that each tray sits securely on their rubber support elements in the side bars before using them for storage.

Note: The third option above provides a less secure position for the cup holder. Make sure you do not store hot liquids in the front slot of the cup holder when using this position, as it may tilt and spill.

Note: Do not use the trinket tray in any position unless fully supported by all four rubber elements in the side bar.

OVERHEAD STORAGE

LOCATING THE OVERHEAD STORAGE



WARNING: Do not place heavy objects in the overhead console. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E169073

OVERHEAD STORAGE LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum evenly distributed shelf load is 20 kg (44 lb).

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If you stop your vehicle and then leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 3 cm (1 in).
- Set your climate control to outside air.

IGNITION SWITCH - VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

Note: Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **O**.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain or inactivity in accessory mode.

Starting the Engine

Press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The system may not function if the passive key is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

Note: A valid key must be inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

STARTING THE ENGINE

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine starts.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

Starting and Stopping the Engine



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Turn the key to position III. Release the key and wait until the engine starts.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.



1. Turn the key to position II.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Note: Wait until the glow plug indicator turns off.

2. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



3. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine starts.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until the glow plug indicator turns off before starting the engine.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in neutral.

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

Glow Plug Indicator



The engine does not start until the glow plug indicator turns off. This may take several seconds in extremely cold conditions.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.



3. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine stops cranking.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.
5. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine starts.

STARTING A FLOODED ENGINE - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.

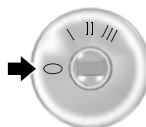


5. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position **0**.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into neutral.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.

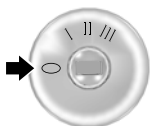


4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



4. Turn the key to position **0**.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.

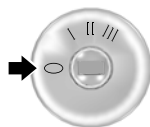


4. Press the push button ignition switch.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Turn the key to position **0**.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - MANUAL TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in

Starting and Stopping the Engine

steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



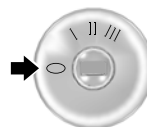
1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

Only in case of emergency, do the following:



1. Turn the key to position **0**.
2. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to safely bring your vehicle to a complete stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

2. Shift into neutral and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop automatically shuts down the vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down. Another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **30min Max Idle** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

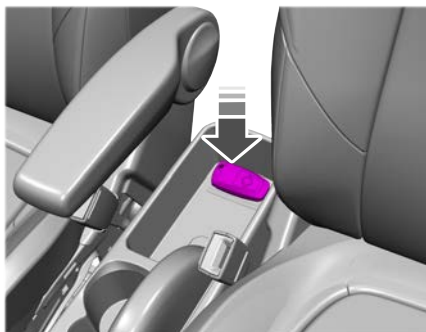
OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

You can stop the shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **Reset** button during the 30-second countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION - VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



1. Place the remote control on the back of the center console stowage area in the position shown, with the buttons facing upward.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Check Engine

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. The On Board Diagnostics system has detected a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire may be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.



Powertrain Warning Lamp

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration and have your vehicle immediately serviced.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Why is the engine idle speed high when I start the engine?

- The speed the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why is the engine not cranking?

The engine does not crank if:

- The vehicle battery does not have sufficient charge.
- The clutch pedal is not pressed for manual transmissions.
- The transmission is not in the park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.
- The starting system has been disabled after multiple attempts of starting the engine.

What should I do if the starting system is disabled?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a set number of times before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the limit, a message may appear and you need to wait at least 15 minutes to start the engine again.

What should I do if the engine does not start?

- If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:
1. Fully press the brake pedal for automatic transmissions or clutch pedal for manual transmissions.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.

2. Fully press and hold the accelerator pedal.



3. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine stops cranking.
4. Release the accelerator pedal.
5. Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key and wait until the engine starts.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - GASOLINE, VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Why is the engine speed high for a while after the engine starts?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

What should I do if the engine cranks but does not start?

If you cannot start the engine after 3 attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

Vehicles with manual transmission

1. Fully press the clutch pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

Disabled starting system

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5.0 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 178).

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - DIESEL VEHICLES WITH: KEYED IGNITION

Why is the engine idle speed high when I start the engine?

- The speed the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why is the engine not cranking?

The engine does not crank if:

- The vehicle battery does not have sufficient charge.
- The clutch pedal is not pressed for manual transmissions.
- The transmission is not in the park (P) or neutral (N) for automatic transmissions.
- The starting system has been disabled after multiple attempts of starting the engine.

What should I do if the starting system is disabled?

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a set number of times before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the limit, a message may appear and you need to wait at least 15 minutes to start the engine again.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS - DIESEL VEHICLES WITH: PUSH BUTTON START

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

- The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

- If you cannot start the engine, do the following:

Vehicles with manual transmission

1. Fully press the the clutch pedal.

Note: *Make sure that the parking brake is applied.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine



2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Make sure that the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure that the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).



2. Press the push button ignition switch until the engine starts.

Disabled starting system

- You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

- If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 8 km (5 mi) after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

- If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 178).

Starting and Powering Off

STARTING AND POWERING OFF PRECAUTIONS

- The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, such as keys or a cell phone.
- A valid remote control must be inside your vehicle to switch the power on and start your vehicle.
- Remote controls left inside your vehicle when locked are disabled. A message may appear in the instrument cluster display indicating that there is no key detected when you try to start your vehicle. Press the unlock button on the remote control to enable it, and then start your vehicle.
- Make sure all occupants fasten their seat belt.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Make sure the vehicle is in park (P).
- Make sure there is no charge cord coupler connected to the vehicle.

STARTING THE VEHICLE

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button start.

POWERING OFF



WARNING: Do not switch off your vehicle when it is moving. This results in a significant decrease in braking and steering assistance. If the vehicle is switched off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, could also turn off. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: If you unintentionally switch your vehicle off, shift into neutral (N) and press the push button start to restart your vehicle.

When your vehicle is not moving and is started, or the power is in accessory mode, press and release the push button start without pressing the brake pedal. This shuts off the vehicle and all electrical accessories.

Only in a case of emergency, when your vehicle is moving, press the push button start three times within two seconds, or press and hold for at least one second. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop. When your vehicle comes to a complete stop, shift into park (P).

RESTARTING THE VEHICLE AFTER POWERING OFF

Fast Restart

The fast restart feature allows you to restart your vehicle within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Within 10 seconds of switching your vehicle off, press the brake pedal and press the push button start. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid remote control.

Starting and Powering Off

Once your vehicle starts, it remains on until you press the push button start, even if it does not detect a valid remote control.

If you open the driver's door for 2 seconds or longer while your vehicle is on and the selector is in park (P), you cannot shift out of park (P) if the system does not detect a valid remote control device.

VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

WHAT IS THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

Vehicle power down timer automatically shuts down your vehicle if it has been idling for an extended period of time in order to save battery power.

HOW DOES THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER WORK

Before your vehicle shuts down, a message appears in the information display showing a timer counting down from 30 seconds. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, your vehicle shuts down.

After the shutdown, another message appears in the information display to inform you that your vehicle has shut down in order to save battery power.

Start your vehicle as normal.

SWITCHING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER ON AND OFF

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press Vehicle.
3. Switch Vehicle Power Down Timer on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the vehicle power down timer. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the vehicle on.

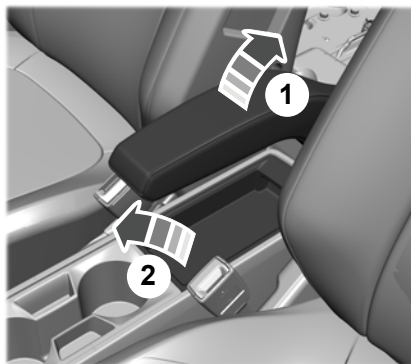
OVERRIDING THE VEHICLE POWER DOWN TIMER

You can stop the shutdown or reset the timer before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the 30-second countdown.

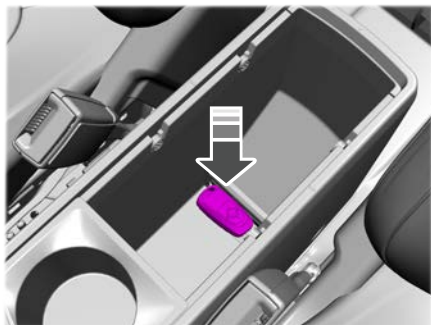
ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start your vehicle, follow the steps below.



1. Lift the armrest.
2. Remove the upper storage tray.

Starting and Powering Off



3. Place the remote control in the bottom of the inner storage tray as shown with the buttons facing upward.
4. Press and hold the brake pedal.
5. Press the push button start to switch the power on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND POWERING OFF – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the vehicle not start?

- The system does not function if the remote control frequencies are jammed, or if the remote control battery has no charge. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 185).
- The system does not function if the 12-volt battery has no charge. 12-volt battery depletion can occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into neutral, switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Auto StartStop** on or off.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

1. Stop your vehicle.
2. Shift into neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal and the accelerator pedal.

Note: *To obtain maximum benefit from the system, shift into neutral and release the clutch pedal whenever you stop your vehicle for more than three seconds.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Press the clutch pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or clutch pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Select Neutral To Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but cannot because the transmission is in gear.	Shift into neutral to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action. It illuminates gray when the system is not available.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when you disabled the feature.

AUTO-START-STOP AUDIBLE WARNING

The Auto-Start-Stop audible warning sounds if you open the driver door when the system has stopped the engine.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Shift into neutral and restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Manual Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Auto StartStop** on or off.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

Note: *The engine stops when you shift into park (P) whether you have your foot on the brake pedal or not.*

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press Brake to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a Pedal to Start Engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS



WARNING: The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action. It illuminates gray when the system is not available.



The auto-start-stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when you disabled the feature.

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Condition	Details
Shift to P, then restart engine	The system is not functioning.	Shift into park (P) and restart the engine yourself.
Manual restart required	The system is not functioning.	Restart the engine yourself.

Auto-Start-Stop - Automatic Transmission

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver seatbelt is unfastened.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The transmission is in manual (M).
- Your vehicle is on a steep grade.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.

- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?

No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.

Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



WARNING: Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.

- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - GASOLINE

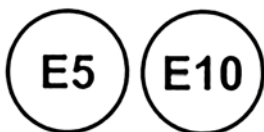


WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.



WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.

Use minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.



E268502

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL - DIESEL



WARNING: Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

B7

Your vehicle is suitable for use with biodiesel blends up to 7% (B7).

Note: We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments. Your Warranty does not cover repairs or replacement of parts needed to correct the effects of using such unadvised products.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is at the left-hand side of the luggage compartment.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 194).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L (1.1 gal) of fuel to restart the engine.

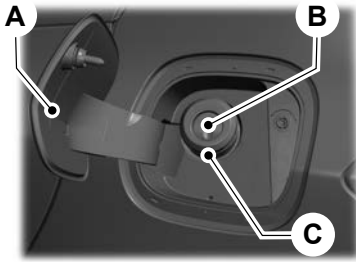
Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries.



WARNING: Keep children away from the fuel pump. Never let children pump fuel.



WARNING: Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.



WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.



WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



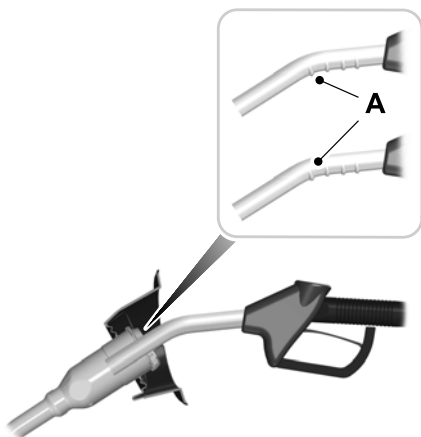
WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.



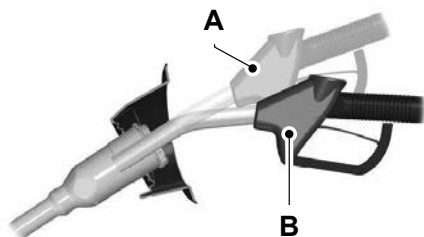
WARNING: Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.

1. Open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

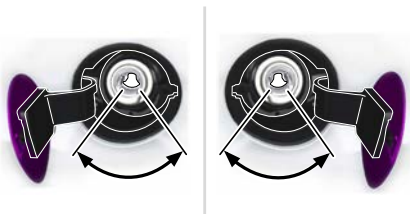
Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline



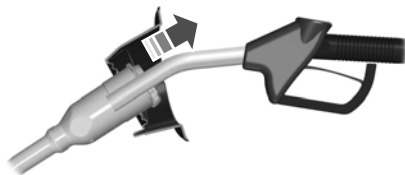
3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch on nozzle A. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.



4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position B when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position A can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown.



6. When the nozzle shuts off, wait at least 5 seconds, then slightly raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Close the fuel filler door.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - GASOLINE

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

Note: The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

Capacity

Variant	Quantity
All.	45 L (9.9 gal)

Note: The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY - DIESEL

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank after running out of fuel. Included in the advertised capacity is an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Capacity

Variant	Quantity
All.	44 L (9.7 gal)

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO₂ Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO₂ emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test

procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO₂ emissions and electric range. CO₂ is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO₂ emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - GASOLINE

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
8.6–7.3 (33–39)	7.1–5.8 (40–49)	6.7–5.6 (42–50)	9–7.4 (31–38)	7.8–6.5 (36–43)	148–176

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES - DIESEL

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO ₂ Emissions
L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	L/100 km (mpg)	g/km
7.2–5.4 (39–52)	6.4–4.8 (44–59)	6.6–4.5 (43–63)	9.7–6.1 (29–46)	7.7–5.2 (37–54)	137–202

Fuel and Refueling - Diesel/Gasoline

FUEL AND REFUELING AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel.

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Fuel level low	An early reminder of a low fuel condition. Refill your vehicle.
Check Fuel Fill Inlet	Check to make sure the fuel fill inlet is fully closed.

Diesel Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER

The diesel particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful diesel particulates from the exhaust gas.

HOW DOES THE DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

The diesel particulate filter reduces emissions by trapping exhaust particles before they reach the tailpipe. The system must periodically clean the exhaust particles that gather inside the filter. This is carried out in three ways, passive regeneration, active regeneration and manual regeneration.

Passive Regeneration

In passive regeneration, the normal exhaust system temperature cleans the filter by oxidizing the soot. Cleaning occurs during normal vehicle operating conditions due to driving patterns.

Active Regeneration

Once the diesel particulate filter is full, active regeneration raises the exhaust temperature to eliminate the particles.

When the engine control module detects that the diesel particulate filter is nearly full of particulates, and you are not operating your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, messages appear in the instrument cluster display as a reminder for you to drive your vehicle in order to clean the diesel particulate filter. If you drive your vehicle in a manner to allow effective regeneration, the instrument cluster display shows a cleaning exhaust filter message.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.



WARNING: When the **Exhaust filter cleaning** message appears in the information display, do not park near flammable materials, vapors or structures until filter cleaning is complete.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the diesel oxidation catalytic converter or the diesel particulate filter. The diesel oxidation catalytic converter and the diesel particulate filter heat up to very high temperatures after only a short period of engine operation and remain hot after you switch the engine off.

Note: Avoid running out of fuel.

Note: During regeneration at low speed or engine idle, you may smell a hot metallic odor and could notice a clicking metallic sound. This is due to high temperatures reached during regeneration and is normal.

Note: Changes in the engine or exhaust sound may be heard during the regeneration process.

Diesel Particulate Filter

Failure to perform active or manual regeneration when instructed could result in a clogged diesel particulate filter. If the diesel particulate filter fills beyond the regeneration threshold, your vehicle disables the ability for active and manual regeneration. This could result in irreversible damage your vehicle Warranty may not cover.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

The diesel particulate filter on your vehicle requires periodic regeneration to maintain its correct function.

If your journeys meet one of the following conditions:

- You drive only short distances.
- You frequently switch the ignition on and off.
- Your journeys contain a high level of acceleration and deceleration.

You must carry out occasional trips with the following conditions to assist the regeneration process:

- Drive your vehicle in more favorable conditions, which you will find at higher vehicle speeds in normal driving, on a main road or freeway for a minimum of 20 minutes. This drive may include short stops that will not affect the regeneration process.
- Avoid prolonged idling and observe speed limits and road conditions.
- Do not switch the ignition off.
- Select a suitable gear to ideally maintain engine speed between 1500 and 3000 RPM.

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



If there are any issues with the diesel particulate filter system, or when the system is at the point of oversaturation, the powertrain warning lamp and the malfunction indicator lamp illuminate to inform you that your vehicle requires service. You may not be able to initiate filter cleaning. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Diesel Particulate Filter

DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Exhaust filter cleaning	Your vehicle has entered the cleaning mode. Various engine actions will raise the exhaust temperature in the Diesel Particulate Filter system to burn off the particles (exhaust soot). After the vehicle burns the particles off, the exhaust temperature will return to normal levels. This message is NORMAL.
Exhaust Filter Over-loaded Drive to Clean	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust Filter Over-loaded Clean Now	
Exhaust Filter at Limit Clean Now	The diesel particulate filter is full of particles (exhaust soot) and you are not operating the vehicle in a manner that allows normal cleaning. Drive the vehicle above 50 km/h (30 mph) when it is safe to do so, until the message turns off.
Exhaust Filter at Limit Drive to Clean Now	
Exhaust filter drive completed	Your diesel particulate filter is clean.
Exhaust filter cleaned	Your diesel particulate filter is clean (OCR Only).
Exhaust filter cleaning stopped	The manual regeneration process has stopped (OCR Only).
Exhaust Filter Over Limit Service Now	You must have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer. Ignoring this warning message could lead to reduced drivability and customer expense, including damage to the diesel particulate filter. Your new vehicle warranty may not cover this damage.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

WHAT IS THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM

Selective catalytic reduction is an engine emission control system that reduces exhaust emission levels by injecting AdBlue® into the exhaust system.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Keep AdBlue® out of reach of children. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. In case of contact with your eyes, immediately flush with water and get prompt medical attention. In case of contact with your skin, immediately clean with soap and water. If you swallow any AdBlue®, drink plenty of water and immediately seek medical attention.



WARNING: Only refill the AdBlue® tank in a well-ventilated area. When you remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap or an AdBlue® container cap, ammonia vapors may escape. Ammonia vapors can be irritating to skin, eyes and mucous membranes. Inhaling ammonia vapors can cause burning to the eyes, throat and nose and cause coughing and watery eyes.



WARNING: Tampering with or disabling the selective catalytic reduction system results in severe vehicle performance limitation, eventually your vehicle not starting.



WARNING: Immediately refill the AdBlue® fluid when low and replace when contaminated. Drive with caution and be careful where you stop because you cannot restart your vehicle until you refill or replace the fluid.

Do not dilute the AdBlue® with water or any other liquid.

Do not put AdBlue® in the vehicle fuel tank. This can cause engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not put fuel or any additives in the AdBlue® tank. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not overfill the AdBlue® tank.

Immediately remove any residue on painted surfaces when filling with AdBlue®.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Only use AdBlue® certified to ISO-22241.

Note: *The use and refilling of AdBlue® is mandatory for the vehicle to comply with the legal emission requirements.*

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM GUIDELINES

- Do not re-use an empty fluid container.
- Do not store the AdBlue® container in direct sunlight.
- Store the AdBlue® at temperatures between -5°C (23°F) and 20°C (68°F).

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

- Do not store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.
- AdBlue® is non-flammable, non-toxic, colorless and water-soluble.



The AdBlue® tank filler pipe is next to the fuel tank filler pipe and has a blue cap. Fill the tank using a fluid pump at an AdBlue® filling station or an AdBlue® container.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK IN COLD WEATHER

AdBlue® may freeze when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F). Your vehicle has a preheating system which allows the fluid to operate below -11°C (12°F). If you overfill the AdBlue® tank and the fluid freezes, it may cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

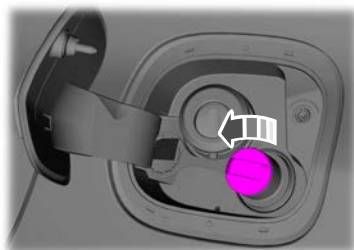
Note: It may not be possible to fully fill the AdBlue® tank when the temperature is below -11°C (12°F).

Note: If the AdBlue® tank is frozen, it could not correctly display the fluid level or recognize when you fill the tank. The AdBlue® level updates when the tank completely thaws out.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A FUEL STATION PUMP

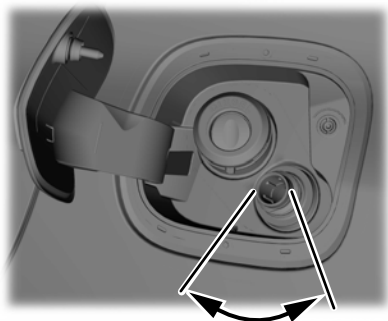
Filling the AdBlue® tank using a fuel station pump is similar to refueling your vehicle.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.

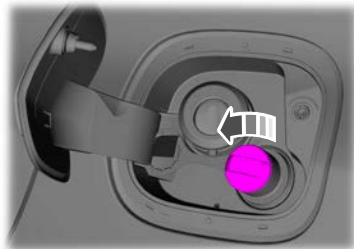


2. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
3. Fully insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System



2. Place the spout on to the container and tighten it until you feel a strong resistance.



4. Operate the AdBlue® pump nozzle within the area shown.

Note: The pump nozzle shuts off when the tank is full.

5. Slightly raise the AdBlue® pump nozzle and then slowly remove it.
6. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

FILLING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM TANK USING A PORTABLE CONTAINER

Use containers that have a seal on the spout.

Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.

1. Remove the fluid container cap.

3. Remove the AdBlue® tank filler cap.
4. Insert the spout into the AdBlue® tank filler pipe until the seal on the spout fully seats.

5. Pour the fluid into the tank.

Note: The fluid stops flowing when the tank is full.

6. Return the container to the vertical position slightly below the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
7. Allow any fluid remaining in the spout to drain back into the container.
8. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® tank filler pipe.
9. Remove the spout from the AdBlue® container and replace the cap.
10. Replace the AdBlue® tank filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks.

Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the AdBlue® tank with incorrect fluid. Incorrect fluid use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID LEVEL

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
4. Select **AdBlue® level**.

CHECKING THE SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM STATUS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
4. Select **AdBlue® Info**.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION FLUID CONSUMPTION

AdBlue® consumption is directly related to fuel consumption and is governed by many factors, for example driving style, high speed driving, stop-start driving, air conditioning usage, add-on accessories, payload and towing. The AdBlue® consumption may vary between 1% and 6% of the fuel consumption but could be more under extreme conditions such as heavy towing.

AdBlue® consumption is specified for a vehicle variant and not for a single car.

ADBLUE® CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the difference between the amount of AdBlue® in a full tank and a tank when the fluid level gauge indicates empty. In addition, a tank contains an empty reserve, which is the amount of fluid in the tank after the fluid gauge indicates empty.

Note: *The amount of usable fluid in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.*

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	13.5 L (3.0 gal)

Materials

Name	Specification
AdBlue® HAMJ-M99C130-xx	WSS-M99C130-A

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The warning lamp illuminates if the system detects the fluid level

is low or if there is a system malfunction.

If the warning lamp illuminates, the information display messages give you an indication whether the concern is fluid related or if there is a selective catalytic reductant system malfunction. If the warning lamp illuminates when your vehicle is moving, and the fluid is at a sufficient level, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

AdBlue® Level

Message	Action
AdBlue® low Range: {####} km Refill soon AdBlue® low Range: {####} mls Refill soon	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® low No engine start in {####} km AdBlue® low No engine start in {####} mls	Indicates the approximate distance remaining before the AdBlue® tank becomes empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank as soon as possible.
AdBlue® empty Refill to start engine	The AdBlue® tank is empty. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Refill the AdBlue® tank. The minimum AdBlue® refill quantity required to restart the engine is available in the information display.

Note: When filling the AdBlue® tank from empty, there may be a short period before the increased AdBlue® level is registered.

Note: If the AdBlue® tank freezes at low level, the displayed remaining distance could be reduced.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

AdBlue® Malfunction

Message	Action
AdBlue® system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® malfunction No engine start in {####} km AdBlue® malfunction No engine start in {####} mls	Indicates the approximate distance before a detected system fault would restrict the engine from starting. The engine would not restart if you switch the ignition off. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
AdBlue® malfunction Service required to start engine	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Selective Catalytic Reduction System

SELECTIVE CATALYTIC REDUCTION SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is that noise after switching off the engine?

- When you switch off the engine the selective catalytic reduction system pump runs for a short period of time. This is normal.

Catalytic Converter

WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 375).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 193).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS

Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.



Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Gasoline Particulate Filter

WHAT IS THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER

The gasoline particulate filter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters particulates from the exhaust emissions.

HOW DOES THE GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER WORK

Particles in the exhaust emissions collect in the gasoline particulate filter causing a gradual restriction over time. This restriction is removed through a regeneration process controlled by the engine control system. The regeneration process converts the particles captured by the filter into harmless gases.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The regeneration process creates very high exhaust gas temperatures and the exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during and after regeneration and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables.
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Do not ignore warning lamps, indicators or information messages.

If the filter is saturated or approaching saturation, a warning lamp could illuminate and a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

If you do not take action when a warning lamp illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display, you could cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER REQUIREMENTS

Regeneration occurs when you drive at moderate to high speed. However if you generally drive short distances at low speed, the engine control system could actively raise the exhaust emissions temperature to remove the particulates that have collected in the filter to make sure that it continues to correctly operate.

To assist in regeneration, we recommend that you make occasional trips that allow you to:

- Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for a minimum of 20 minutes.
- Avoid prolonged engine idling.
- Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.

Note: *The best gasoline particulate filter regeneration occurs following moderate acceleration or extended cruise, such as exiting the highway, with your foot off the accelerator and decelerating while in gear.*

Gasoline Particulate Filter

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – WARNING LAMPS



Malfunction indicator lamp.

GASOLINE PARTICULATE FILTER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Exhaust Filter at Limit Drive to Clean Now	• Drive at a varied range of conditions, including highway conditions for 20 minutes or until the message disappears. • Avoid prolonged engine idling. • Select a suitable gear to maintain engine speed between 1500 and 4000 RPM.
Exhaust filter over limit Service now	• Drive at a moderate speed. • Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration. • Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle

WHAT IS THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

The high voltage battery is a highly sophisticated lithium ion battery system, used to store electric energy to power your vehicle.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This battery pack should only be serviced by an authorized electric vehicle technician. Improper handling can result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.

Your vehicle consists of various high-voltage components and wiring. All of the high-voltage power flows through specific wiring assemblies labeled as such or covered with a solid orange convolute, or orange striped tape, or both. Do not come in contact with these components.

PRESERVING YOUR HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

When using the battery at a low state of charge, your vehicle could start disabling accessory features and also limit performance.

If your vehicle reaches a 0% state of charge, recharge your vehicle as soon as possible.

Always take care not to store the vehicle at 0% state of high voltage battery charge as it may cause premature wear.

In everyday use it is acceptable to use the full state of charge window, however there are a few best practices we recommend in order to maintain the health and life of your battery.

Overnight Charging

You can increase the longevity and performance of your high voltage battery by using the charge scheduling and departure and comfort settings on your touchscreen or in the Ford app.

With Charge Scheduling you can improve the high voltage battery's longevity by delaying the start of charging and setting a maximum charging limit. Setting the maximum charge level to be 80% for everyday usage reduces strain on the battery.

Note: *Avoid charging to over 90% before making long descents downhill. Take advantage of your regenerative braking system by coasting as you descend. It will boost your battery energy, improve brake performance and reduce wear and tear on your brakes.*

You can improve driving range and performance by scheduling departure times and cabin comfort level with the Departure and Comfort features. This warms or cools the cabin and also conditions the battery to ensure best driving range and performance by the set departure time.

DC Charging

Note: *DC charging is only available for battery electric vehicles.*

Minimizing the use of DC fast charging can help to preserve the health of the high voltage battery throughout the life of the vehicle. See **DC Charging** (page 234).

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle

Storage Temperature

Large temperature drops can result in significant state of charge and range reduction. In some cases, it can also lead to significant power reduction. This effect is more noticeable at lower temperatures and lower state of charge.

Storing your vehicle in temperatures between 0°C (32°F) and 45°C (113°F) is the most beneficial for the high voltage battery.

The vehicle may prompt you when parking your vehicle that the outside temperature is low and suggest that you should plug in your vehicle when not in use.

Plug in your vehicle when temperatures reach the freezing point to maintain battery performance and maximize driving range.

Storage State of Charge

Storing your vehicle's high voltage battery at higher states of charge is less favorable than storing at lower states of charge.

When storing your vehicle for more than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. See **Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage** (page 449).

To store your vehicle at a low state of charge, you can set a low charge limit for your location. See **Charging Settings** (page 238). See **Charging Settings** (page 238).

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY

Please recycle in accordance with local regulations.

ENERGY CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging)

The declared WLTP energy consumptions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

In accordance with the Worldwide Harmonized Light Vehicles Test Procedure (WLTP) the certified electric range can be achieved with a fully charged battery depending on the existing series and battery configuration. The actual electric range may vary due to various factors such as weather conditions, driving style, route profile, vehicle condition, age and condition of the lithium-ion battery.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and electric range. CO2 is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO2 emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

High Voltage Battery - Battery Electric Vehicle

ENERGY CONSUMPTION FIGURES

Electric Range City	Electric Range	Electric Energy Consumption	Weighted, Combined CO ₂
km (mi)	km (mi)	kWh/100km (mi/kWh)	g/km
325 - 528 (202 - 328)	206 - 382 (128 - 237)	24.4 - 12.9 (2.6 - 4.8)	0

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Stop safely now Exit vehicle in safe area	Safely stop and exit your vehicle as soon as possible, then call for emergency assistance.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read all instructions and warnings in this publication before using the charging equipment.



WARNING: Do not use an electrical outlet that is immersed or submerged in water, snow, or in an electrical storm. When using the charging equipment, avoid moisture, water and snow at all times. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The wall outlet and charging equipment must be in good condition and installed to comply with provisions of up-to-date local codes and regulations. Do not use an ungrounded wall outlet. Have a qualified, licensed electrician install and check the wall outlet, if you suspect that it is not properly grounded, the connection feels loose, or the outlet is damaged. The wall plug must fit firmly and fully into the outlet. Do not use extension cords, surge protectors, timers or other adapters. Failure to follow these instructions could result in electric shock, property damage, personal injury, or death.



WARNING: Do not drop the control box or coupler. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, fire, electric shock, death or property damage.



WARNING: Visually inspect the charging equipment before each use. Do not use the charging equipment if it is damaged. Do not attempt to open or repair any part of the charging equipment components as it will not

operate. Charging equipment components contain critical safety devices in the wall outlet plug and connector that cannot be serviced. Contact your local dealer for assistance. Failure to follow these instructions could result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the charging equipment in temperatures outside of the operation range of -30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F). Store the charging equipment in a clean dry place between the temperatures of -30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F). Stow the control box indoors on the hanger or all the charging equipment in the bag after use to prevent damage to the charging equipment and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not connect or disconnect any pluggable components of the charging equipment when in use or charging. Do not put fingers or any object into the electric charge coupler. Supervise any children in the vicinity of the charging equipment when plugged into the wall outlet. Failure to follow these instructions could cause damage to the charging equipment or cause personal injury or death.



WARNING: This equipment has arcing or sparking parts. Do not expose to flammable vapors. Position this equipment at least 450 mm (18 in) above the floor.



WARNING: High voltage is present in your electric meter housing and power distribution panel. Contact with high voltage can result in fire, electric shock, personal injury or death.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT OVERVIEW

Public Charge Cord

Your vehicle comes with a public charge cord located under the passenger seat or safely secured and clipped in the cargo area.



You can charge your high voltage battery with the public charge cord at a public AC charge station that has no cables attached. See **Charging Using Your Public Charge Cord** (page 232).

A charge wall box can be purchased separately as an accessory to utilize the public charge cord at home.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	Type 2
Voltage (PHEV)	230 V
Voltage (BEV)	230–400 V
Maximum Current (PHEV)	16 amps max continuous
Maximum Current (BEV)	32 amps max continuous (per phase)
Phases (PHEV)	1
Phases (BEV)	1-3
Frequency	50Hz

Specification Type	Specification Value
Power (PHEV)	3.5 kW max
Power (BEV)	Vehicle 11kW max, Public charge cord 22 kW max
Cable length	5–10 m (16–33 ft)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m

Note: Only vehicles with dual Charger are capable of 22kW charging, with 32A on each phase. Vehicles with a single Charger have max charging capability of 11kW, with 16A on each phase.

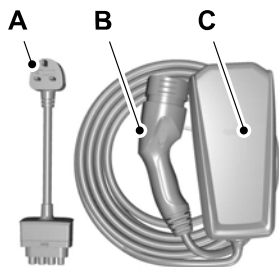
Universal Home Charge Cord (if

Equipped)

You can charge your vehicle's high-voltage battery using a standard household outlet with the universal home charge cord. See **Charging at Home** (page 227).

The universal home charge cord can be purchased separately as an accessory. It has a low power connector to use with a 230V outlet. A high power connector can also be purchased separately. Connector type varies by market.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



- A Connector.
- B Coupler.
- C Control Box.

You must plug the connector into the control box first. Then plug the connector into the household outlet, and then plug into the vehicle charge port.

The power indicator illuminates blue when the connector is properly inserted into the control box and dedicated wall outlet.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until an audible click is heard. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the control box before inserting it into the outlet. Improper insertion causes a longer charge session or faults.

Note: Follow the installation instructions provided with the charger.

Note: We recommend using the supplied plugs and connectors.

Note: Use the correct connector for the appropriate market in which you are charging your vehicle.

Note: If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If a dedicated circuit is not available, contact a licensed professional electrician regarding the installation of a dedicated outlet.

Note: The universal home charge cord will not charge and give a fault indication, if ground is not present.

Note: Plug the connector for the universal home charge cord directly into the wall plug receptacle. Do not plug the universal home charge cord into any form of extension cord.

Note: If the wall bracket is not used for mounting the charging equipment, plug the charging equipment into an outlet closer to ground.

Note: Handle the coupler with care. Do not drop the coupler. The coupler and the cable should be mounted to the wall when not in use.

Specification Type	Specification Value
Charger Model	IEC
Voltage	230 V
Maximum Current	16 amps max continuous
Frequency	50Hz
Power draw when idle	< 2 Watts
Power draw when charging	< 4 Watts
Cable length	6.1 m (20 ft)
Operating temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Storage temperature	-30°C (-22°F) to 85°C (185°F)

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Specification Type	Specification Value
Environmental	IP65
Ventilation	Not required
Maximum Altitude	4000m

Universal Home Charge Cord Auto-Restart

Auto-restart helps make sure that your vehicle is charged and ready for use when needed. A charge could be interrupted if errors are detected. Charging resumes once the error is no longer detected. The red indicator illuminates during an error condition.

The exception to the immediate auto-restart is when the interruption is due to a charger ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) event. The charger attempts to restart 15 minutes after a (GFCI) event. After the fourth attempt to restart, the charger shuts down and the red indicator stays on.

If the fault persists, do not continue to try to charge your vehicle. Contact your authorized dealer.

MOVING AND STORAGE INSTRUCTIONS

Make sure you wrap the universal home charge cord after charging. Store the universal home charge cord in the storage bag supplied with the universal home charge cord when not in use.

Note: Do not hold the universal home charge cord by the power cable. Hold the complete unit and carefully place back in the storage bag.

Note: To remove the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and pull away from the control box.

CARE INSTRUCTIONS

Do not use cleaners or solvents as this could damage the universal home charge cord. Do not place stress on the charger cables. If the unit overheats, remove the universal home charge cord from direct sunlight.

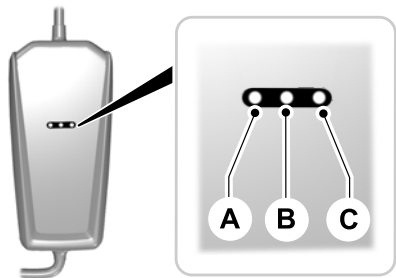
SAFETY FEATURES

The charger includes the following safety features to protect against the risk of electric shock:

- Service ground check: The charger constantly checks for the presence of a service ground connection. If the service ground ever fails, the charger's red indicator illuminates and shuts down power to the vehicle.
- Thermal event sensor: Charger module senses out-of-ordinary thermal events and decreases charging current or shut the unit down if required.
- GFCI protection: The charger has a ground fault circuit interruption (GFCI) reaction system to protect against electric shock. If the charger module detects an output ground fault, it shuts down power to the output cable and the red indicator illuminates.
- Insulation: The charger module, connector, cable assembly, and charge coupler are completely insulated, no exposed live parts, to protect against electric shock.
- Unintentional disconnection: The charge coupler is designed to minimize unintentional disconnection. A pilot signal wire in the cable and charge coupler eliminates the possibility of electric shock when not connected to a vehicle or if an unintended disconnect occurs during a charge. Disconnection during charging is safe.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

CHARGING EQUIPMENT INDICATORS (IF EQUIPPED)



- A Amber fault indicator
- B Blue status indicator
- C Red trouble indicator

Note: When first plugged into a wall outlet the amber, blue and red indicators blink once. Then the blue indicator turns on, followed by a blink of the red indicator. After, the blue indicator turns off then back on. This cycle happens twice if a different connector is used from a previous charge.

Unpowered

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord is not powered.

Make sure the outlet is operational, and the circuit breaker is in the ON position or try using another outlet. Ensure the connector is fully inserted into mobile power cord. Ensure the plug is not severely degraded. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging.

No action required.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Standby

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	ON	OFF	The mobile power cord is powered and ready to charge. At the current time the mobile power cord is not charging the vehicle.

If you expect the mobile power cord to be charging the vehicle, make sure the vehicle coupler is properly inserted into the vehicle. Check and adjust your charging time preferences in the on screen display. If your vehicle is still not charging, contact your authorized dealer.

Startup and Rebooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	ON	ON	The mobile power cord is recovering after encountering an error.

Universal home charge cord is powering up or recovering after an error. If the mobile power cord cycles for more than 2-3 minutes, unplug the vehicle coupler. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the issue persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Reduced, Internal Issue

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Make sure the connector and the control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area.

Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Reduced, AC Plug Or Wall Outlet

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
BLINK	PULSING	OFF	The mobile power cord is charging at a reduced rate due to overheating of the connector or the wall outlet.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. Ensure the connector is fully seated. If the universal home charge cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. Have a licensed electrician check for missing ground, utility under or overvoltage. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

User Troubleshooting

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
ON	OFF	OFF	The mobile power cord has encountered a fault that requires troubleshooting.

Make sure the connector and control box are properly connected. Unplug and replug in the connector. If the mobile power cord is warm or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet. Try a different connector if you have one available. If the error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	ON	There is an internal fault in the mobile power cord that cannot be recovered.

Try a different connector if you have one available. If error persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Non - Recoverable Fault

AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	BLINK	There is an internal fault in the connector that cannot be recovered.

Try using another connector if you have one available. If not, contact your authorized dealer about obtaining a replacement. If your warranty has expired, you can order a replacement from your dealer.

Ground Leakage Fault

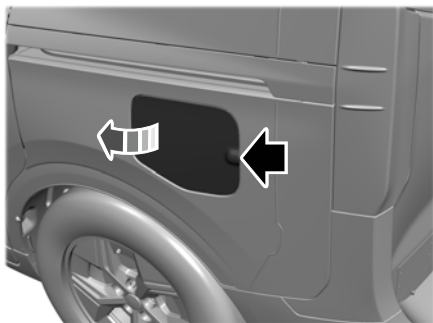
AMBER	BLUE	RED	Details
OFF	OFF	PULSING	Electrical current is leaking through a potentially unsafe path.

Note: When plugging into an unfamiliar wall outlet, let the vehicle charge for several minutes before leaving it unattended. The red indicator illuminates if it is not charging. The unit turns off if the breaker or infrastructure ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) is tripped. You can view your vehicle charging status remotely via the Ford app.

LOCATING THE CHARGE PORT

The charge port is on the rear-left side of your vehicle. To open, press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release.

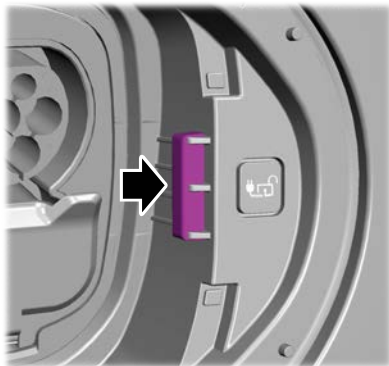
Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



Note: Do not apply excessive force. Forcing the door open or closed damages the charge port.

CHARGE PORT INDICATORS

The charge status indicator is next to the charging port behind the charge port door. It indicates the charge status of the high voltage battery in your vehicle.



There are three charge port indicator light colors, which indicate a specific action:

- White is used as a courtesy light to help with plugging in and to acknowledge actions such as plugging in and unplugging or pressing the charge coupler unlock button.
- Blue is used when the vehicle is plugged in and either charging or waiting to charge.
- Amber is used to indicate charge faults.

The charge status indicator displays the current state of charging:

- The indicator illuminates in pulsing blue, if the vehicle is actively charging.
- When the vehicle reached the target state of charge with the vehicle on, the indicator remains pulsing blue to indicate that the charge of the HV battery is preserved.
- When charging stops with the vehicle off, the charge status indicator illuminates solidly in blue color for 30 seconds before turning off.

Note: Charging stops when complete or when paused due to charge settings or charge station actions.

Note: If the charge status indicator does not light up or pulse after plugging in, please verify that the charge port light setting is on. If you do not wish to have the charge status indicator light up at all while charging, you can turn it off under the charge port light settings inside the access menu on your touchscreen.



Charging faults are identified by the color amber on the charge status indicator. Faults can occur within the vehicle charging system or outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station or electrical supply.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Note: If the system detects a fault inside the vehicle charging system at any point in a charge cycle, the charge status indicator illuminates solidly in amber color for 30 seconds then turns off. If this happens, unplug the charge coupler and plug it back into the charge port receptacle. If the problem persists, contact your authorized dealer.

Note: If the system detects a fault outside the vehicle, such as with the charge station, the charge status indicator flashes in amber color continuously for 30 seconds then turns off. If this happens check the charge station or electrical supply.

AC CHARGING

CHARGING AT HOME (If Equipped)

Charging through a standard household outlet with the universal home charge cord.

Universal home charge cords are optional equipments. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.



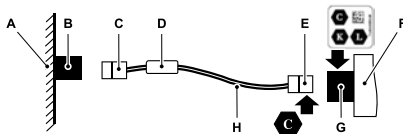
AC charging is the preferred method of charging, if your vehicle is capable of both AC and DC charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE - The plug must be properly grounded. Use a dedicated circuit. If you do not use a dedicated circuit, the circuit breaker could trip or open. If you do not have a dedicated circuit, contact a licensed professional electrician for proper installation.

You must unwrap the universal home charge cord completely before charging.

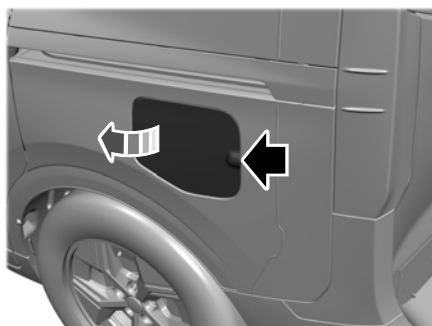
When using the universal home charge cord, plug the charge coupler into the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A Mains.
- B Socket Outlet (Household).
- C Plug.
- D Control box.
- E Charge coupler.
- F Vehicle.
- G Charge port receptacle.
- H Universal home charge cord.

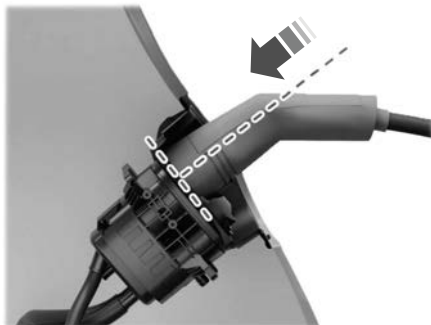
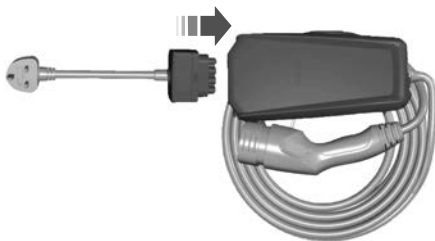
1. Apply the electric parking brake.

Note: The electric parking brake must be applied to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.



Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



3. Select the appropriate connector for the wall outlet you will use and plug the connector into the universal home charge cord control box.

Note: To insert the connector, firmly grasp the connector by the cable or plug and push into the control box until it clicks. Make sure the connector is fully inserted and flush with the outlet. Improper insertion will cause a longer charge session or faults.

4. Plug the connector into the wall outlet.
5. Confirm that the universal home charge cord's LEDs illuminate.
6. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to the set target charge unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location. See **Charging Settings** (page 238).

Note: Plug the connector into the wall outlet before connecting the charge coupler to your vehicle's charge port.

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the indicator light will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.



Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Note: There could be a delay in indicator light illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Note: If charging for your vehicle fails, please contact the Customer Relationship Center. To ensure superior service, please take note of the serial number when contacting customer support.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button in the charge port and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

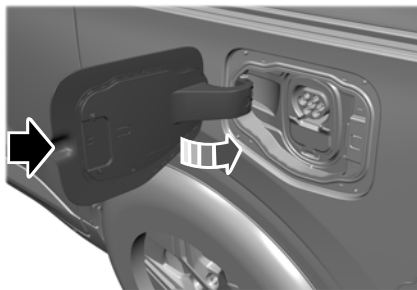
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle or the vehicle doors are unlocked.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 238).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time.

Note: You cannot release the electric parking brake until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING IN PUBLIC

Charging at an AC charge station with cables attached.

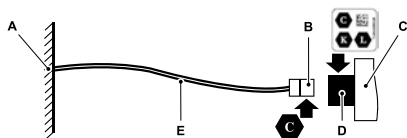


AC charging is the preferred method of charging, if your vehicle is capable of both AC and DC charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station with cables attached, choose charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



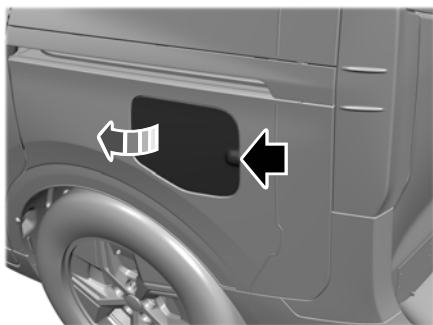
- A AC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Apply the electric parking brake.

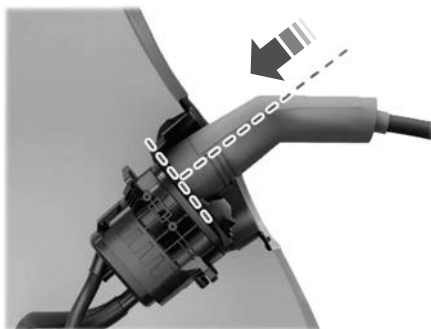
Note: The electric parking brake must be applied.



3. Select the appropriate charge station coupler.
4. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.



Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to the set target charge unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location. See **Charging Settings** (page 238).

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the indicator light will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in indicator light illumination due to vehicle internal communications.

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button on the charge port and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

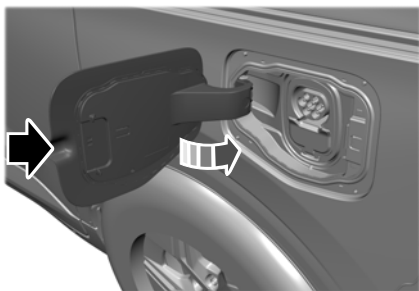
Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle or the vehicle doors are unlocked.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 238).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time.

Note: You cannot release the electric parking brake until you remove the charge coupler handle.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGING USING YOUR PUBLIC CHARGE CORD

Charging at an AC charge station without cables attached or at a wall box.

Charge wall boxes are optional equipment. For more information, contact your authorized dealer.

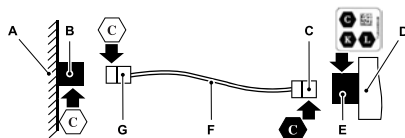


AC charging is the preferred method of charging, if your vehicle is capable of both AC and DC charging. AC charging preserves the health of the high voltage battery for longer high voltage battery life.

When AC charging, keep your vehicle plugged in when outside temperatures are very high or low. This enables the system to maintain the high voltage battery for best performance.

When using an AC charge station without cables attached, plug your public charge cord into the charge station and the vehicle charge port where the same identifier symbol can be seen.

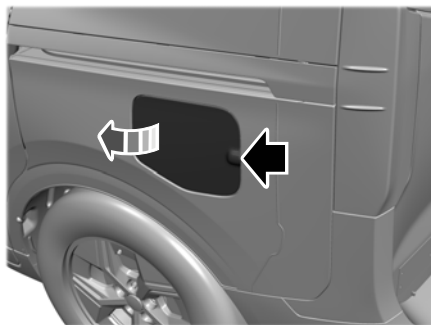
You must unwrap the public charge cord completely before charging.



- A AC charge station.
- B Charge station port.
- C Vehicle charge coupler.
- D Vehicle.
- E Charge port receptacle.
- F Public charge cable.
- G Charge station charge coupler.

1. Apply the electric parking brake.

Note: The electric parking brake must be applied.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Select the appropriate charge station port.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



4. Plug the charge station side coupler into the charge station port.

Note: To insert the coupler, firmly grasp the handle and push into the charge station port.

5. Plug the vehicle side coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

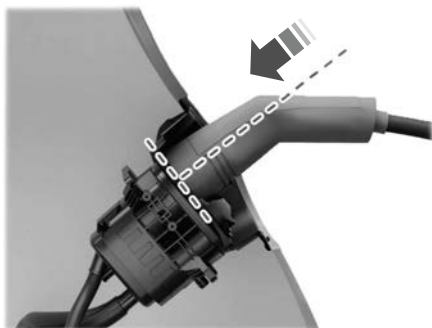


Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When you plug in your vehicle, it will start charging to the set target charge unless scheduled charging has been set up for this location. See **Charging Settings** (page 238).

Note: When the handle is properly engaged the indicator light will illuminate. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: There could be a delay in indicator light illumination due to vehicle internal communications.



Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

When charging your vehicle at a BlueOval Charge Network station, use the vehicle App to activate and pay for charging. You can also just plug in to activate charging at Plug & Charge capable stations. If the charging station is not in the BlueOval Charge Network, use the directions on the charge station to activate the charger.

For more information, visit www.owner.ford.com.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Stopping Charging



1. Push the coupler unlock button in the charge port and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.

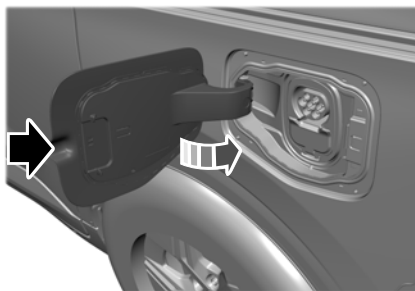
Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle or the vehicle doors are unlocked.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 238).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time.

Note: You cannot release the electric parking brake until you remove the charge coupler handle.



2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

DC CHARGING



DC charging allows you to charge the vehicle's high voltage battery in significantly less time than the standard charge method. You can charge on the go before the battery has exhausted all of its power, or when traveling using the trip planner as part of your vehicle app.

We recommend ending DC charges at 80% state of charge.

In cold temperatures, you may notice that DC charging takes longer when the ambient temperature drops below 10°C (50°F). Shutting off climate control or reducing climate control temperature and fan settings for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging allows the battery to warm up and improve the charging rate.

For the convenience of DC charging and time, there is a different fee structure depending on the charging station and network you choose.

Note: The vehicle could reduce DC fast charging rate to preserve the battery. This is based on battery temperature, battery state of charge and battery health.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Note: When the temperature is below freezing, fully turning off cabin heat for the first 10 to 15 minutes of DC charging could significantly improve the charging rate.

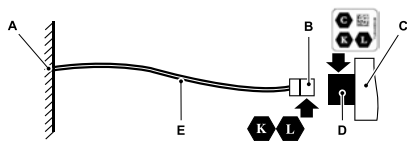
Note: Charge times vary depending on outside air temperature, power level, charger type, and location in which you are charging.

Note: The vehicle could reduce the DC charging rate to maximize the life of the battery.

Note: Based on vehicle and battery configuration, the vehicle may charge to a value less than 100% on DC to optimize charging time and battery longevity. If you need to DC charge your vehicle above this level, use the Target Charge to raise the target charge level. See **Charging Settings** (page 238).

To charge the high-voltage battery at a charge station:

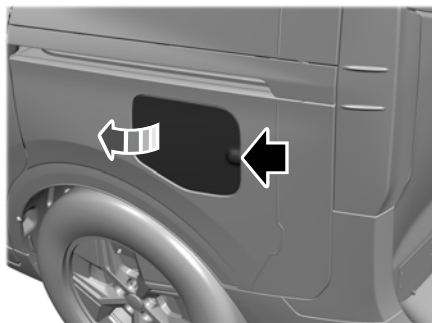
When using charge station with cables attached, choose the charge station cord coupler where the same identifier symbol can be seen.



- A DC charge station.
- B Charge coupler.
- C Vehicle.
- D Charge port receptacle.
- E Cable.

1. Apply the electric parking brake.

Note: The electric parking brake must be applied to charge and for the charge status indicator to illuminate.

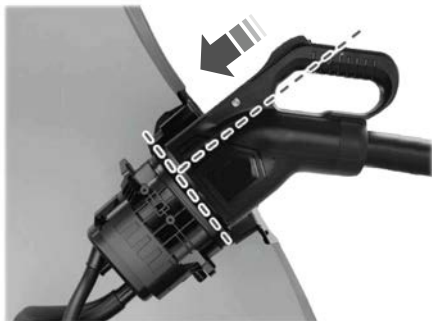


2. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door and then release to open the door.
3. Open the dust cap cover on the charge port to expose lower connectors.



4. Select the appropriate DC charge station coupler.
5. Plug the charge coupler into the charge port receptacle on your vehicle.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



Note: Your vehicle will lock to the charge coupler.

Note: When the charge coupler is properly engaged, the indicator light illuminates. This indicates the beginning of a normal charge cycle.

Note: The vehicle monitors battery health and may take actions including, but not limited to, reducing the DC fast charge rate to protect the battery hardware from damage, and to maintain battery health.

Information about public charge stations, pricing, power levels and real time availability is available through the in-vehicle screen as well as the vehicle app. Rates for charging will vary by power level, provider, location, and time of day.

Stopping Charging

1. Push the coupler unlock button in the charge port and remove the charge coupler handle from the vehicle.



2. Close the dust cap cover.

Note: Do not attempt to remove the charge coupler before you unlock it. Do not use any kind of tool to try and remove a locked charge coupler. Doing so could damage your vehicle and the charge coupler.

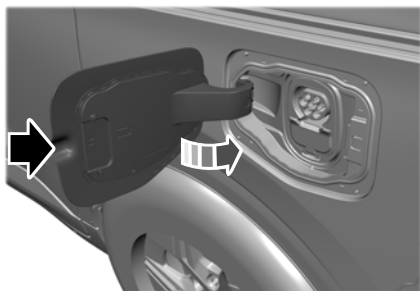
Note: You cannot unlock the charge coupler handle unless the vehicle remote is near the vehicle or the vehicle doors are unlocked.

Note: You can also unlock the cord through your vehicle touchscreen. If the cord still does not unlock, please contact roadside assistance or try the manual release method. See **Charge Coupler Manual Release** (page 238).

Note: If the charging equipment remains connected, the charge port relocks in a short period of time. Charging does not resume.

Note: You cannot release the electric parking brake until you remove the charge coupler handle.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle



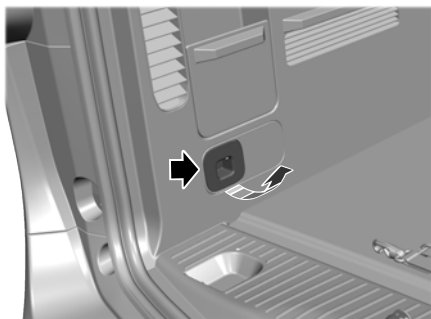
3. Press the center right-hand edge of the charge port door to close.

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE - M1 KOMBI/N1 KOMBI

In the event that your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler after pressing the unlock button or through the vehicle access menu, you can manually release it.

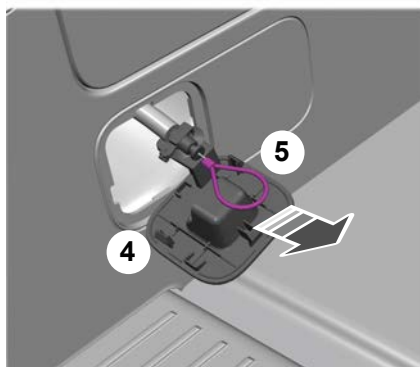
Releasing the charge coupler:

1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the liftgate.



3. Remove the trim panel in the rear-left side of the cargo area.

Note: Use the small window in the trim panel to get a firm grip with your fingers.



4. Hold the trim panel firmly in one hand.
5. Pull the manual release pin with your other hand in the direction shown.

Note: Only a light effort is required. The pull distance is approximately 3 cm (1.18 in).

6. Remove the charge coupler from the vehicle charge port.
7. Reinstall the trim panel.
8. Close the liftgate.

Note: The next time you start your vehicle or plug in to charge, the locking mechanism re-engages and the manual release pin resets.

Note: If the issue persists, have your vehicle checked.

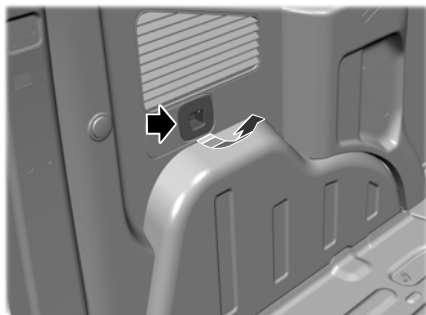
Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

CHARGE COUPLER MANUAL RELEASE - N1 KOMBI VAN/ VAN

In the event that your vehicle does not unlock the charge coupler after pressing the unlock button or through the vehicle access menu, you can manually release it.

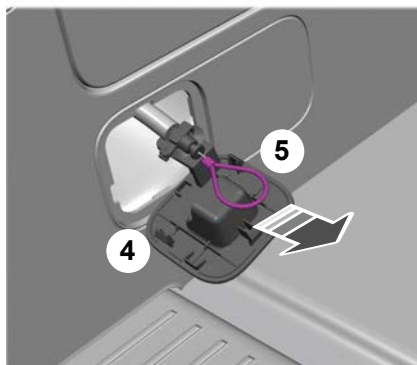
Releasing the charge coupler:

1. Switch off your vehicle.
2. Open the liftgate.



3. Remove the trim panel in the rear-left side of the cargo area.

Note: Use the small window in the trim panel to get a firm grip with your fingers.



4. Hold the trim panel firmly in one hand.
5. Pull the manual release pin with your other hand in the direction shown.

Note: Only a light effort is required. The pull distance is approximately 3 cm (1.18 in).

6. Remove the charge coupler from the vehicle charge port.
7. Reinstall the trim panel.
8. Close the liftgate.

Note: The next time you start your vehicle or plug in to charge, the locking mechanism re-engages and the manual release pin resets.

Note: If the issue persists, have your vehicle checked.

CHARGING SETTINGS



You can schedule charging to take advantage of lower cost electricity rates during off-peak hours if you have signed up for a time of use pricing plan with your utility provider. You can also set a max charge limit for your battery and a departure time and cabin temperature so your vehicle is ready to go when you are.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Scheduled charging can be set up on the touchscreen or in the Ford app.

To view your charge settings:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press charge settings.

Charging Status

Shows the present state of the charging system.

Charge Status	Description
Will charge when plugged in	The vehicle is unplugged and starts charging once plugged in.
Will wait for preferred charging time	The vehicle is unplugged at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging is scheduled to start at the time displayed based on your vehicle settings. You must plug your vehicle in prior to the start time to begin charging at that time.
Waiting for preferred charging time	The vehicle is plugged in at a location with charging time preferences enabled. Charging starts at the time displayed, which is based on your charge time settings.
Charging stopped	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been stopped through the Ford app.
Charging	The vehicle is plugged in and charging.
Fast charging	The vehicle is plugged into a DC Fast Charge station and charging.
Charged	The vehicle finished charging to the max charge limit setting.
Charging 12V battery	The vehicle is plugged in and charging the 12V battery.
Conditioning the cabin	The vehicle is plugged in and the climate control system is operating according to the departure and comfort settings.
Conditioning the battery	The vehicle is plugged in and conditioning the high voltage battery.
Vehicle charging fault	The vehicle is plugged in and there is a fault within the vehicle charging system. Unplug and plug back in. If the fault is still present, contact your authorized EV certified dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Charge Status	Description
Charging Station Malfunction	The vehicle is plugged in and a fault has been detected with the charge station or charging cord. Check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charging station not detected	A charging coupler has been plugged into the vehicle but there is no connection with a charging power source.
Charging station paused	The vehicle is plugged in and charging has been paused at the charge station.

High Voltage Battery State of Charge

Displays the remaining charge percentage with 100% representing the total amount of energy you can get from an external charge.

Estimated Vehicle Driving Range

Displays the estimated distance the vehicle can travel with the current high voltage battery charge level. See **Vehicle Range Display** (page 118).

Live Charging Information

When the vehicle is charging, the following charging speed information is displayed:

- Live Charging Power (Kilowatt)
- Live Charging Current (Ampere)

Note: Live charging current is only displayed when the vehicle is AC charging.

Target Charge

Displays the charge percentage at which charging stops and can be adjusted using the main slider.

Note: Daily and trip labels are displayed to suggest the target charge for each of these usages based on battery life and vehicle range.

Note: Avoid charging to over 90% before making long descents downhill. Take advantage of your regenerative braking system by coasting as you descend. It will boost your battery energy, maintain brake performance and reduce wear and tear on your brakes.

Charging End Time

When charging, the estimated end time displays.

When your vehicle is at a saved charging location and not plugged in, the end time displays based on known charging infrastructure.

Note: Charging time information is estimated. Certain conditions could result in longer charging times.

Departure Times Card

Displays the next departure time and associated cabin comfort setting.

Press the departures times card to access the departure and comfort settings.

Setting departure times allows you to control charging schedules and warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in, so your vehicle is ready to drive when you are. By setting a departure time, your vehicle

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

can use your charge time settings to minimize your electricity costs but still prioritize finishing charging before your scheduled departure. The calendar view allows you to program two departure times per day for each day of the week.

Note: By using energy from your charging source while plugged in, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy is needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range.

Note: For the system to be able to maintain the battery, the vehicle must be able to draw power from connected equipment.

Note: You can also access this feature using the Ford app. Additional information and settings are displayed on the charge settings screen once charging locations and departure and comfort have been set up.

Departure and Comfort

Follow these steps to set departure times and cabin comfort level.

Note: The departure and comfort settings do not apply when connected to a DC fast charger.

1. Press the departures times card on the charge settings screen.
2. Select a time.

Note: Two time settings are shown for each day of the week on the departure times schedule screen.

3. On the departure times settings screen, set your desired time, cabin comfort level and days of the week to repeat.
4. Press save.

Note: Your settings are now shown on the departure times schedule screen.

5. Press back to return to the main charge settings screen.

Note: The next departure time and cabin temperature are displayed.

Note: Cabin conditioning comfort level could vary depending on if you plug into a normal household outlet or a higher power outlet or charging station. The power available for conditioning is limited to the charging station power available. At low ambient temperatures and low charge power, a small amount of high voltage battery power in addition to the charging power could be used to heat the cabin.

Preferred Charge Times Card

Displays the preferred charge times set for the current location.

Press the preferred charge times card to set preferred charge times for a specific charging location.

When you are at a saved charging location, your vehicle prioritizes charging based on your preferred charge schedule. You can set one preferred charge time for weekdays and another one for weekends. This feature allows you to take advantage of electric utility rate plans that offer lower pricing during certain times of day. Contact your utility company to see what plans are available.

Note: For saved charging locations, your vehicle prioritizes charging during your preferred charge times. Charging outside these charge time windows only occurs when additional charging time is needed to reach the maximum charge level by your next departure time. In this case, the vehicle begins charging right away after plugging in. The vehicle stops charging and waits for the preferred charge times when the remaining charging can be contained in the preferred charge windows.

Note: You can also access this feature using the Ford app.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Preferred Charge Times

Follow these steps to set preferred charge times for a charging location.

Note: *The vehicle uses your current location to create the new charge schedule. Before saving a new location, ensure that the vehicle has successfully charged at that location for at least a few minutes.*

Note: *Charging location settings do not apply to DC fast chargers.*

1. Press the preferred charge times card on the charge settings screen.
2. To add the current charging location, press the add location button. You can also edit settings for previously saved locations.
3. Edit the nickname of the location and press the next button.

Note: *The name of the location cannot start with a blank character and cannot contain special characters.*

4. Set one preferred charge time for weekdays and or weekends by specifying if the charging time applies to weekdays or weekends and the start and end time of the charge time. After defining the preferred charge times for weekdays and or weekends, press the save button to store the settings.

Note: *Selecting all or none of the 24 hours results in any time of day given equal priority for charging.*

5. Return to the previous screen and see the summary of the preferred charge times for this location. Press the back arrow to return to the charge settings screen or press the location to change its settings.

Advanced Menu

Allows you to limit the current rate when AC charging to prevent circuit breakers from tripping.

AC Rate

Follow these steps to set the AC rate and limit the current anytime the vehicle is AC charging.

1. Press the advanced menu on the charge settings screen.
2. Set the AC rate using the slider.
3. Return to the previous screen to save the value set.

USING YOUR VEHICLE APP AND CHARGING

The Ford app allows you to do the following:

- Monitor and manage your vehicle's charging, including charge schedules and preferences.
- Locate a charger and activate a charger on the Charging Network.
- Plan a trip and charging options along your route.
- Check charging station plug availability.
- Initiate a charge session automatically at Plug and Charge capable charge stations.
- Control your Connected Charge Station remotely.
- Override charge preferences and starting and stopping charging.

For more information, visit <https://www.owner.ford.com>.

CHARGING EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION SYMBOLS



Identifier symbol visible on vehicle cord couplers, charge station cord couplers and vehicle charge ports.

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Vehicle coupler, charge station coupler and vehicle charge port.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Identifier symbol visible on charge station ports and your public charge cord coupler.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
AC	EN 62196-2	Type 2	Charge station port, public charge cord coupler.	Lower or equal to 480 volt RMS



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	50 volt to 500 volt



Charge station coupler identifier symbol.

Supply Type	Standard	Configuration	Type of Accessory	Voltage Range
DC	EN 62196-3	FF	Vehicle coupler, vehicle charge port, and charge station coupler.	200 volt to 920 volt

Charging Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when your vehicle is plugged in.

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Is vehicle plugged in?	Your vehicle needs confirmation you unplugged it before allowing a start. You must make sure you unplugged your vehicle and you respond to the message prompt before starting your vehicle.
Plug in to Maintain 12V Battery	Indicates that the high voltage battery can no longer support the 12 volt battery due to its low range. Plug in your vehicle to charge the high voltage battery and maintain the 12 volt battery at a healthy state.
Charge station malfunction See manual	Your plugged in vehicle detects a fault with the charge station or charging cord. Please check the charging cord and the charging station or electrical supply.
Charge Station Communication Error Contact Station Provider	Your plugged in vehicle cannot communicate with the charging station. Please contact the station provider.

CHARGING YOUR VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

My vehicle does not charge

- Ensure you properly connect the connector and control box. Unplug the charge coupler from your vehicle and unplug the connector from the wall outlet. Then check the connector to be sure that the connector is properly connected into the mobile charger control box. If the mobile charger is warm, or in a hot environment, try charging in a cooler area. Try a different outlet or a different connector if you have one available. If the problem persists, contact an authorized EV certified dealer.

My vehicle is not conditioning before my departure time

- If your home charging equipment has smart settings or programable settings, they may interfere with vehicle charge settings. In order for the vehicle to perform scheduled functions, such as scheduled charging or preconditioning prior to a departure time, power must be available to the vehicle.

Manual Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS

Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever or use the gearshift lever to hang and support objects. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to keep your vehicle stationary when waiting on a hill. This could cause damage to the clutch not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Failure to fully press the clutch pedal could cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage to the transmission. Engage the clutch smoothly for best operation. Engaging the clutch abruptly can cause damage to the transmission or clutch system that is not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

SHIFTING INTO REVERSE

Do not shift into reverse when your vehicle is moving. This could cause damage to the transmission not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

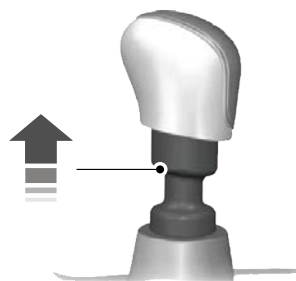
1. Fully press the brake pedal.
2. Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	1.69 L (1.8 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.



3. Raise the collar and shift into reverse.

MANUAL TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



It illuminates to advise you that shifting gear may give better fuel economy or lower emissions.



CHECKING THE CLUTCH FLUID LEVEL

The clutch and brake systems share the same fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 261).

Manual Transmission

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Fluid 75W MX KU7J-M2C955-AA	WSS-M2C955-A1

CLUTCH FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance RU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

MANUAL TRANSMISSION – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if any gear is not fully engaged?

Fully press the clutch pedal and shift into neutral. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, fully press the clutch pedal again and shift into gear.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the vehicle off and remove the key or remote control before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: Ford vehicles incorporate innovative transmissions to boost fuel efficiency and reduce greenhouse gases, among other benefits. Optimizing performance involves balancing many vehicle attributes including acceleration, handling, shift-feel, fuel economy, or hauling and towing capacity. Designing a transmission in light of that balance and to meet varied customer expectations and preferences, from smoother shift to quick shift and everything in between, may result in what some operators could perceive as a brief jerking or shaking sensation during gear changes. That is a normal part of transmission operation. If you have concerns about your transmission, please visit your Ford-authorized dealer. If the vehicle has a malfunction during normal use because of a defect in factory-supplied materials or factory workmanship during the warranty term, Ford will service the vehicle under warranty. Transmission service may be a software modification (including calibration upgrades) to alter the subjective driving characteristics of your vehicle, such as transmission shift-feel, that may better fit your personal preferences. To the extent Ford offers a software modification to enhance customer satisfaction, the service is not evidence of the existence of a defect or to cure an impairment to the use, value or safety of the vehicle.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)



WARNING: Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the transmission in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12V battery has run out of charge.

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the electric parking brake when the selector is in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle could shift into park (P) if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

Note: A tone could sound when you select park (P).

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N), power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

LOW (L)

In low (L) your vehicle holds low gears.

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 364).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.

P R N D L

Note: The position could illuminate on the selector.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION SHIFT INDICATORS



Shift indicators illuminate when shifting gear is recommended.



Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region this may not be applicable.

Automatic Transmission

SHIFTING YOUR IMMOBILE VEHICLE OUT OF PARK (P)



WARNING: When doing this procedure, you need to take your vehicle out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.



WARNING: If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



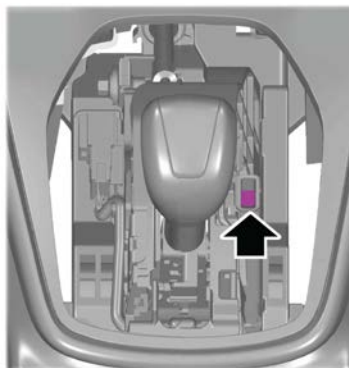
WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the stoplamps are working.

Use this procedure to shift your vehicle out of park (P) in the event of an electrical malfunction or emergency.

Shifting Your Vehicle Out of Park



1. Remove the panel.



2. Locate the access hole.
3. Using a flat-bladed screwdriver, push the brake shift interlock lever toward the front of your vehicle and hold it there.
4. Move the selector lever from park (P) to neutral (N).
5. Install the panel.
6. Press the brake pedal, start the engine and release the parking brake.

Returning Your Vehicle to Normal Mode

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Transmission Not in Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if you open the driver door before shifting into park (P).

Park Selection Audible Warning

Sounds when you shift into park (P).

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - DIESEL/GASOLINE

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	4.35 ± 0.1 L (4.6 ± 0.1 qt) ¹

¹ Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes.

Materials

Name	Specification
Transmission Fluid T-DC	WSS-M2C218-A1/A2

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Limited function See manual	The transmission has limited functionality. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission too hot Press brake Transmission over-heating Stop safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, leave the engine running and allow the transmission to cool. Wait until the message disappears.
Transmission Not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
Shift malfunction Confirm park brake Apply before exiting the vehicle	Displays when there is a system fault and the park brake needs to be depressed before exiting the vehicle. See your authorized dealer.
To stay in neutral when exiting vehicle select M button	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
To stay in neutral when exiting vehicle select L button	Displays when you shift into neutral (N).
30min Neutral Mode enabled Not a tow mode	Displays to confirm that your vehicle has entered Stay in Neutral Mode.

Electric Motor

ELECTRIC MOTOR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.



WARNING: Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds limits vehicle performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Note: Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake if a fuse is blown. See **Fuses** (page 386).

Note: Your vehicle may not release the electric parking brake unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: Your vehicle automatically applies the electric parking brake if you attempt to exit your vehicle without pressing the electric parking brake button. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 255).

Note: A tone could sound when you press the electric parking brake button.

REVERSE (R)



WARNING: Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)



WARNING: In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Your vehicle is free to roll as long as you remain in the driver seat.

Roll-away protection is active in neutral (N) and automatically applies the electric parking brake if the driver leaves the vehicle.

SELECTOR POSITIONS

PARK (P)

Park By Brake

This feature replaces the transmission park (P) position on the selector with the electric parking brake button.



Pressing the electric parking brake button on the selector applies the electric parking brake and also prevents power from being transmitted to the driven wheels. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 267).

Note: A tone could sound if you attempt to exit your vehicle without applying the parking brake.

Electric Motor

If you want to keep your vehicle in a free rolling state, roll-away protection needs to be deactivated. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 255).

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

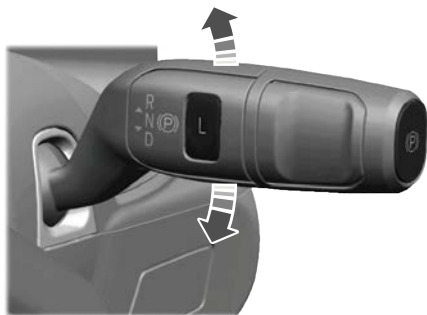
Note: Various levels of brake energy recuperation are available when in drive (D).

LOW (L)

In low (L) your vehicle decelerates more noticeably than in drive (D) when you release the accelerator pedal.

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 363).

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR



The position selector is on the right-hand side of the steering column.

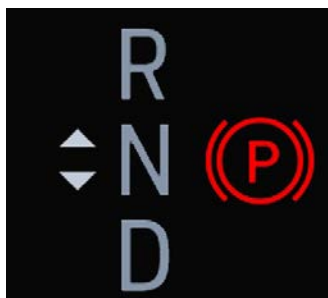
1. Power your vehicle on. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 184).
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Move the selector one position up or down to select neutral (N).

Note: When you select neutral (N), an instructional message appears, asking if you want to stay in neutral (N) when exiting the vehicle. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 255).

4. Move the selector two positions up to select reverse (R).
5. Move the selector two positions down to select drive (D).
6. Press the low (L) button when your vehicle is in drive (D) to enter or exit mode.
7. To apply the electric parking brake, press the electric parking brake button on the selector when the vehicle is stationary. See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 267).

SELECTOR POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



Electric Motor

ELECTRIC MOTOR AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning

- Sounds when you press the electric parking brake button on the selector.
- Sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without applying the electric parking brake.

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION

HOW DOES ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION WORK

Roll-away protection is always active on default. It secures the vehicle by automatically applying the electric parking brake if the driver leaves the vehicle without pressing the electric parking brake button.

Roll-away protection can be temporarily deactivated. In this case the vehicle is free to roll even if the driver leaves the vehicle, for example in an automatic car wash.

Do not tow your vehicle in this mode. See **Towing Your Vehicle Precautions** (page 382).

ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION LIMITATIONS

When roll-away protection is deactivated, the vehicle is free to roll. Make sure to avoid unwanted vehicle movement. Failure to follow these instructions could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Your vehicle reactivates roll-away protection if any of the following occur:

- You press the electric parking brake button.
- You select a position other than neutral (N).

Roll-away protection may not work if any of the following occur:

- The driver seat sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver seatbelt sensor is malfunctioning.
- The driver door ajar sensor is malfunctioning.

See an authorized dealer if any of the following occur:

- Seatbelt indicator illuminates or tone sounds with the driver seatbelt fastened.
- Door ajar indicator does not illuminate with the driver door open.
- Door ajar indicator illuminates with the driver door closed.
- A message appears advising to apply the parking brake after selecting drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R).

SWITCHING THE ROLL-AWAY PROTECTION ON AND OFF

Switching the Roll-Away Protection Off

1. Power your vehicle on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: *An instructional message appears.*

4. Shift into neutral (N) again within a few seconds.

Note: *A permanent confirmation message appears when your vehicle enters the mode.*

Electric Motor

Note: A tone could sound when you deactivate roll-away protection.

5. Release the brake pedal.

Note: Your vehicle is free to roll.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle in this mode.

Switching the Roll-Away Protection On

1. Press the brake pedal.
2. Shift into a position other than neutral (N) or press the electric parking brake button to turn roll-away protection on.

Note: If drive (D), low (L) or reverse (R) is selected, the vehicle is ready to drive.

Electric Motor

ELECTRIC MOTOR – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC MOTOR – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park brake will engage at low speed	You pressed the electric parking brake button at a high speed. When the vehicle reaches a preset slower speed the electric parking brake fully applies to secure the vehicle. If the electric parking brake is not needed, shift into drive (D) and continue driving.
Vehicle may move Press park brake button to secure vehicle	Roll away protection might be turned off. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle. Press the electric parking brake button to secure the vehicle.
Press brake to shift	You tried to release the electric parking brake without first pressing and holding the brake pedal. Always press and hold the brake pedal before attempting to shift into drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R) when the electric parking brake is applied.
To stay in neutral when exiting vehicle select N again	You shifted into neutral (N) position. To disable roll-away protection, shift into neutral (N) again. When roll-away protection is disabled, your vehicle does not apply the electric parking brake automatically when the driver exits the vehicle. You need to press the electric parking brake button to secure the vehicle.
Vehicle will stay in Neutral Not a tow mode	You disabled roll away protection. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle but it is not safe to tow the vehicle in this mode.
Vehicle will stay in Neutral Not a tow mode Press brake to shift	You disabled roll away protection. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle but it is not safe to tow the vehicle in this mode. Press and hold the brake pedal before attempting to shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) when you re-enable roll away protection.

Electric Motor

Message	Details
To park seek level ground	The electric parking brake may not be able to prevent the vehicle from rolling when the brake pedal is released. Drive to a flat area where the vehicle can be safely parked. Make sure that the vehicle does not roll when you release the brake pedal before exiting the vehicle. If necessary, use wheel chocks to prevent the vehicle from moving. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Drive Mode Control

WHAT IS DRIVE MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has various drive modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the drive mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

SELECTING A DRIVE MODE



Press the button on the instrument panel to directly access the drive modes on the touchscreen.

As a secondary option:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Select a setting.

DRIVE MODES

ECO



Vehicle settings suited for economical driving.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

NORMAL



Vehicle settings suited for balanced driving.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SLIPPERY



Use this mode for less than ideal road conditions such as snow and ice covered roads or for firm surfaces that are covered with loose or slippery materials.

This mode lowers accelerator pedal responsiveness and optimizes traction and stability controls to help mitigate wheel spin and maintain vehicle control in slick driving conditions.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

SPORT



Vehicle settings suited for sportier driving.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVE MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Drive mode not available	The system is not available. If it is still not available the next time you switch the ignition on, the system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

One Pedal Drive

WHAT IS ONE PEDAL DRIVE

One pedal drive allows you to accelerate, slow down and stop using only the accelerator pedal. Pressing the accelerator down accelerates your vehicle, releasing pressure on the accelerator with your foot still on the pedal slows down your vehicle and releasing the pedal completely allows your vehicle to come to a complete stop if the road grade is not excessively steep.

See **One Pedal Drive Precautions** (page 260).

ONE PEDAL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle.

Shifting into neutral (N) does not hold your vehicle at a standstill.

Shifting into drive (D) or reverse (R) does not cause the vehicle to move if the accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Note: Always check the transmission selection before accelerating.

ONE PEDAL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

One pedal drive is unavailable when any of the following occur:

- Shifting into an incorrect transmission position or applying the electric parking brake when driving.
- Using active park assist.

- Using cruise control.
- Selecting a drive mode other than Normal, Eco or Sport disables one pedal drive.

Releasing the accelerator pedal may not bring your vehicle to a complete stop on steep grades.

Increased vehicle load may reduce accelerator pedal ability to slow the vehicle.

SWITCHING ONE PEDAL DRIVE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **DRIVE MODES**.
3. Switch **1-Pedal Drive** on or off.

ONE PEDAL DRIVE INDICATORS



When one pedal drive is active, the indicator displays in the instrument cluster.

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, your brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this, your hazard lights may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risk of crash when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal could pulse and travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR - DIESEL/GASOLINE

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe

stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Apply the electric parking brake and switch your vehicle off. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

Charging Your Vehicle

Avoid charging to over 90% before making long descents downhill. Take advantage of your regenerative braking system by coasting as you descend. It boosts your battery energy, improves brake performance and reduces wear and tear on your brakes.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.

Brakes



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.



1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.

2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 262).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid DOT 4 LV High Performance RU7J-M6C65-xxxx	WSS-M6C65-A2

Brakes

Note: We recommend using DOT 4 LV (Low Viscosity) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. Use of any fluid other than the recommended fluid could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards or component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS - DIESEL/GASOLINE



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

BRAKE



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer. It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch your vehicle on to confirm the lamp is functional. When the lamp flashes red or stays illuminated red, it indicates low brake fluid level or a hydraulic brake system fault. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn-out. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

There is an electrical motor sound after I press the brake pedal or activate the electric parking brake. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are from the brake system operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 444).*

Parking Brake - Diesel/Gasoline, Automatic Transmission

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake and make sure you shift into park (P). Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, shift into park (P) and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Park brake applied	You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Brake - Manual Transmission

APPLYING THE PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Pull the parking brake lever upward to its fullest extent.

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the parking brake lever upward.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill, select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill, select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

RELEASING THE PARKING BRAKE

1. Firmly press the brake pedal.
2. Slightly pull the parking brake lever upward.
3. Press the release button and push the parking brake lever downward.

PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h.

If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Park brake applied	You have not released the parking brake and your vehicle reaches 5 km/h (3 mph). If the message continues to appear after you have released the parking brake, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Apply the parking brake, switch the vehicle off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.



The electric parking brake button is on the position selector on the right-hand side of the steering column.



Press the button or power off when your vehicle is stationary.

Note: The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the electric parking brake is applied.

Note: Pressing the electric parking brake button on the selector also prevents power from being transmitted to the driven wheels. See **Park (P)** (page 253).

Note: The electric parking brake automatically applies if you attempt to leave your vehicle without pressing the button. See **Roll-Away Protection** (page 255).

Note: Vehicles must use rear brake drums as well as rear brake linings released by Ford or meeting Ford specifications during the vehicle life to ensure adequate park brake performance.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.



Push the button and hold it.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds, the transmission shifts into neutral (N) and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

The vehicle continues to slow down as long as you hold the electric parking brake button. If you release the button the vehicle rolls freely. The button can be repressed, held, and released as necessary to achieve the desired braking rate. The electric parking brake secures the vehicle when it slows to a preset speed unless you reselect Drive (D) before reaching that preset speed.

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Fully press and hold the brake pedal then switch your vehicle on. See **Starting the Vehicle** (page 184).
2. While holding the brake pedal, shift into gear or neutral (N).

Note: Your vehicle is ready to drive when you select drive (D), low (L) or reverse (R).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving with at least 5 km/h. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE

See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 375).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Electric Parking Brake



The electric parking brake indicator flashes red temporarily while you are applying it and stays illuminated red when the electric parking brake is successfully applied. If it flashes red continuously this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.



When the lamp flashes yellow or stays illuminated yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: Lamps may vary depending on region.

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Park brake will engage at low speed	You pressed the electric parking brake button at a high speed. When the vehicle reaches a preset slower speed the electric parking brake fully applies to secure the vehicle. If the electric parking brake is not needed, shift into drive (D) and continue driving.
Vehicle may move Press park brake button to secure vehicle	Roll away protection might be turned off. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle. Press the electric parking brake button to secure the vehicle.
Press brake to shift	You tried to release the electric parking brake without first pressing and holding the brake pedal. Always press and hold the brake pedal before attempting to shift into drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R) when the electric parking brake is applied.
Vehicle will stay in Neutral Not a tow mode	You disabled roll away protection. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle but it is not safe to tow the vehicle in this mode.
Vehicle will stay in Neutral Not a tow mode Press brake to shift	You disabled roll away protection. The vehicle does not automatically apply the electric parking brake when the driver exits the vehicle but it is not safe to tow the vehicle in this mode. Press and hold the brake pedal before attempting to shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) when you re-enable roll away protection.

Electric Parking Brake - Battery Electric Vehicle

Message	Details
To park seek level ground	The electric parking brake may not be able to prevent the vehicle from rolling when the brake pedal is released. Drive to a flat area where the vehicle can be safely parked. Make sure that the vehicle does not roll when you release the brake pedal before exiting the vehicle. If necessary, use wheel chocks to prevent the vehicle from moving. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake malfunction To recover press brake pedal and select R or D	Park brake system indicates a fault which prevents the system from normal operation. Shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) while pressing the brake pedal. The park brake system tries to move the electric parking brake to return back to normal functionality. During this procedure you may notice normal actuation noises of the electric parking brake. If the system is able to return to normal functionality, warning indicators disappear and the vehicle automatically applies the electric parking brake. Shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) while pressing the brake pedal to continue normal driving.
Park brake malfunction Recovery unsuccessful Turn off vehicle and try again	Identified fault within the park brake system is still present which prevents system from the normal operation. While pressing the brake pedal, switch your vehicle off and back on by pressing the push button start twice. Shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) while keeping the brake pedal pressed. The park brake system tries to move the electric parking brake to return back to normal functionality. During this procedure you may notice normal actuation noises of the electric parking brake. If the system is able to return to normal functionality, warning indicators disappear and the vehicle automatically applies the electric parking brake. Shift into drive (D) or reverse (R) while pressing the brake pedal to continue normal driving.

Reverse Brake Assist

WHAT IS REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

Reverse brake assist is designed to reduce impact damage or assist in avoiding a collision while in reverse (R).

HOW DOES REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST WORK

Reverse brake assist functions when in reverse (R) and traveling at a speed of 2–12 km/h (1–7 mph).

If the system detects an obstacle behind your vehicle, it provides a warning through the rear parking aid or cross traffic alert system. Using sensors on the rear of the vehicle, it can detect a possible collision and apply the brakes. If full braking occurs, the system attempts to stop the vehicle a safe distance from the obstacle.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection. For example low or direct sunlight, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Act as soon as you notice the brakes apply to remain in control of the vehicle. If you do not intervene the vehicle may start to move again.

Note: Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Reverse Brake Assist

Note: The system does not react to small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.

Note: When you connect a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and provide an alert, or the system turns off. If the system does not turn off, manually switch the system off after you connect the trailer.

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

Note: When you switch traction control off, reverse brake assist automatically deactivates, except for cross traffic alert sensor based braking.

Note: The system is unavailable when cross traffic alert is off.

SWITCHING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Reverse Brake Assist** on or off.

Note: The system is unavailable when cross traffic alert is off.

Note: The default setting is on in some regions.

OVERRIDING REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST

There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. Firmly pressing the accelerator pedal or switching the feature off overrides the system.

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST INDICATORS

If the system determines that a collision with an obstacle may occur, full braking may apply.



A message and warning indicator appear when the system applies the brakes.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Reverse Brake Assist	Displays when the system applies the brakes and remains on for a few seconds.
Reverse Brake Assist not available See manual	Displays when a related subsystem or feature error has occurred. Make sure the rear view camera and side cameras are clean and not obstructed. Drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains on, have the system checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist malfunction	Displays when a system error has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Reverse Brake Assist off	Displays when reverse brake assist is off.

Reverse Brake Assist

REVERSE BRAKE ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What are the precautions to be followed when using the reverse brake assist system?

- The system uses a combination of rear parking aid cameras, parking sensors and cross traffic alert sensors for operation. Poor visibility or low lighting conditions can impact performance. Make sure the rear parking aid cameras and the sensors are not dirty or obstructed.
- Reverse your vehicle slowly. On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to road infrastructure, for example sloped driveways and textured surfaces behind the vehicle or objects close to the reversing path.

Why is reverse brake assist unavailable?

- Make sure you switch the system on. See **Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off** (page 272).
- Make sure that the liftgate or tailgate, hood and all doors are closed.
- Make sure the cross traffic alert system is on. See **Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off** (page 336).
- Make sure that traction control is on. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 277).
- Your vehicle may have sustained a rear end impact. Have the sensors checked for proper coverage and operation.

- Make sure the exterior cameras are not dirty or obstructed. If dirty, clean the cameras. If the reverse brake assist unavailable message still appears after cleaning the cameras, wait a short time for the message to clear. If the message does not clear, drive the vehicle on a straight road for a short period. If the message remains, have the system checked.
- Make sure the sensors are not blocked or faulted. See **Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors** (page 283). See **Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors** (page 336). See **Parking Aids – Information Messages** (page 285). See **Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages** (page 337).
- You recently had your vehicle serviced, or the battery disconnected. Drive your vehicle a short distance to resume system operation.
- The system does not function when you connect a trailer. Operation resumes when you disconnect the trailer.

Note: *If you are still having problems with reverse brake assist, have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring it to a stop on a slope. This makes it easier for you to pull away without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the system exceeds the time allowed for automatically applying the brakes.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system turns off if there is a malfunction.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Hill Start Assist** on or off.

The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: *There is no indicator to indicate whether the system is on or off.*

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Hill start assist not available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Auto Hold

HOW DOES AUTO HOLD WORK

Auto hold applies the brakes to hold your vehicle after you bring the vehicle to a stop. This can help when waiting on a hill or in traffic.

SWITCHING AUTO HOLD ON AND OFF



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

You can switch the system on or off by accessing the menu on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

Note: You can only switch the system on if the driver seat is occupied.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: When using an automatic car wash, make sure to switch auto hold off or shift to neutral (N) with the brake pedal applied to ensure auto hold is not active.

USING AUTO HOLD

1. Bring your vehicle to a complete stop. The auto hold active indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster display.
2. Release the brake pedal. The system holds your vehicle at a standstill. The auto hold active indicator remains illuminated in the instrument cluster display.
3. Apply the accelerator and drive off in a normal manner. The system releases the brakes and the auto hold active indicator switches off.

Note: The system only activates if you apply enough brake pressure on the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a standstill.

Note: Under certain conditions, the system could apply the electric parking brake. The brake system warning lamp illuminates.

Note: The system switches off if you shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) and press the brake pedal.

The system may not work if any of the following occurs:

- Your vehicle is in stay in neutral mode.
- The driver door is open or the driver seat is not occupied.
- You shift into reverse (R) or neutral (N) before the system is active.

AUTO HOLD INDICATORS



Illuminates when the system is active.



Illuminates when the system is on but cannot hold your vehicle at a standstill at this particular time.

Traction Control

WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces power in order to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Operating your vehicle with the traction control disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The traction control system turns on each time you switch the power on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Traction Control** on or off.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

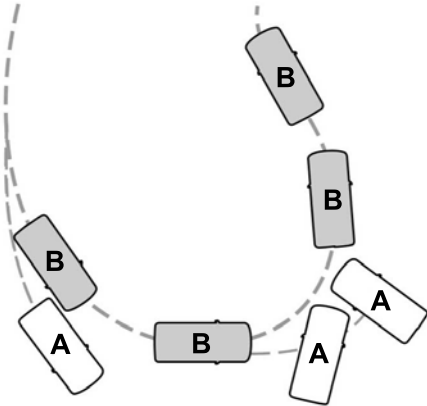
TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
ESC Service required	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switch it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switch it on.

Stability Control

WHAT IS STABILITY CONTROL

The system is designed to support stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path.



- A Without stability control.
- B With stability control.

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the

electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The system works by braking individual wheels and reducing engine speed.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the power on and you cannot switch the system off.

Note: *The system is disabled when you shift into reverse (R).*

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Steering

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving, the system switches to reduced steering assist or manual steering. Additionally, whenever disconnecting the battery or installing a new one, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

Note: *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

When your vehicle is still moving, a significant decrease in steering assistance or a loss of steering assistance could occur if:

- You switch your vehicle off.
- Your vehicle loses electrical power.
- Your vehicle detects a concern.

When your vehicle is off and your vehicle begins moving, there is no steering assistance.

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING ADAPTIVE STEERING

Adaptive Learning (If Equipped)

Adaptive learning helps correct road irregularities and improves overall handling and steering. It communicates with the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and crash avoidance systems.

Note: *When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.*

Steering Tips

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire.
- Uneven tire wear.

Steering

- Loose or worn suspension components.
- Improper vehicle alignment.

Note: A high crown in the road or high crosswinds could also make the steering wander or pull.

STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

STEERING – WARNING LAMPS



The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

Note: If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering lock malfunction Service now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering

STEERING—FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does it seem that the steering is wandering or pulling?

- Check your vehicle for an improperly inflated or uneven tire, loose or worn suspension or steering components, or improper vehicle alignment.

The system is functioning properly and the components have been checked, why is the steering system continuing to pull or wander?

- A high crown in the road or crosswinds could make the steering system feel like it is wandering or pulling.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Mute the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button and use the menu to set the system on mute.

The system can also be muted using the pop-up message that appears when you are in reverse (R).

Parking aid visual indication remains on and can not be turned off when the transmission is in reverse (R)

Parking Aids

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 18 km/h (11 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm (71 in) from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the rear bumper.

Note: When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm (28 in) from the bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication turns off and the audible warning mutes.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h (5 mph) and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stop after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm (28 in) from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm (12 in) or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are grey.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R).

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the information display.

Message	Details
Parking Sensors malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Parking Sensors	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Rear Parking Sensors not available Sensor blocked See manual Press OK to close	A sensor is blocked or the system has malfunctioned. Clean the bumper or remove any obstruction. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check front Park Pilot	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Parking Aids

Message	Details
Check Rear Parking Sensors	The system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Parking Sensors On Off	Displays the parking aid status.
Rear Parking Sensors On Off	Displays the parking aid status.

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R). During operation, guide lines appear in the display that represents the path of your vehicle and proximity to objects behind it.

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Objects above the camera may not be visible. Check the area behind your vehicle when necessary.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the rear cargo door is ajar. If the rear cargo door is ajar, the camera will be out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the rear cargo door is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

REAR VIEW CAMERA LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- Nighttime or dark areas if the reverse lamps are not operating.
- If the camera is obstructed. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The camera is misaligned due to the rear door ajar or damage to the rear of your vehicle.

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA



If you have a liftgate, the rear view camera is located above the license plate.

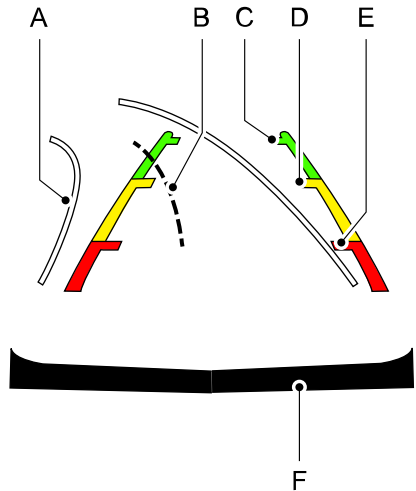
Rear View Camera



If you have a rear cargo door, the rear view camera is located above the license plate.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Rear View Camera

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle forward as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h (31 mph).

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference.

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATOR ON AND OFF



You can only switch the audio on or off in the settings.

When the system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green distance indicators on the information display.

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF - DIESEL/ GASOLINE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift in to park (P).

Rear View Camera

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

If you switch this feature on, the image continues to display when you shift from reverse (R) until:

- You shift to a forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You apply the electric parking brake.

180 Degree Camera

WHAT IS THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA

The 180 degree camera provides an extended image of the area behind your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

When you switch the 180 degree view on, the view splits into three images. You can use the right and left outer images when reversing to check for cross traffic and pedestrians.

When you use the 180 degree camera view, objects behind your vehicle are shown extremely stretched and do not appear as actual ratio.

180 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the liftgate or the rear cargo doors are ajar. If the liftgate or the rear cargo doors are ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.

Note: *If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects.*

Note: *Guide lines do not appear when you switch the 180 degree view on.*

SWITCHING THE 180 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF

When you shift to reverse (R) and the rear view camera image appears, press the button in the upper left corner of the touch screen to switch the 180 degree view on. Press the button again to switch it off.

The 180 degree view turns off when you shift into park (P) or into any forward gear and the vehicle speed sufficiently increases.

Note: *Whenever you shift to reverse (R) the standard rear view camera image with guidelines is the default view.*

Cruise Control

WHAT IS CRUISE CONTROL

Cruise control lets you maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

Requirements

Use cruise control when the vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h in metric units or 15 mph in imperial units.

SWITCHING CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF



WARNING: Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to the current vehicle speed or 20 km/h (15 mph), whichever is greater. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode.

Switching Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is active or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch cruise control off, the set speed clears.

SETTING THE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Note: The indicator changes color in the information display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

SET-

Press and hold the toggle button upward to accelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decelerate. Release the button when you have reached your preferred speed.

Note: If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed does not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.

Cruise Control

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal to cancel the set speed.

Note: *The system remembers the set speed.*

Note: *The system cancels if the vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h (10 mph) under the set speed when driving uphill.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED



Press the button.

CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch the system on.

Adaptive Cruise Control

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.

Adaptive Cruise Control False Passing Prevention

When traveling on motorways, the adaptive cruise control system aims to prevent prohibited passing maneuvers if a slower vehicle is detected in the left-hand lane, or right-hand lane in left-hand traffic. This prevention function on passing applies when the speed of traffic in the adjacent lane is greater than approximately 80 km/h (50 mph). In these situations, the adaptive cruise control system maintains a distance to the vehicle in front in the adjacent lane and does not accelerate to pass. In slower moving traffic, the system allows the passing but limits the speed difference.

HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO WORK

Adaptive cruise control with stop and go uses radar and camera sensors to maintain a set gap between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you while following it to a complete stop. Stop and go can also be set to follow a vehicle directly in front of you and adjust the set speed, while you are at a complete stop.

Adaptive Cruise Control False Passing Prevention

When traveling on motorways, the adaptive cruise control system aims to prevent prohibited passing maneuvers if a slower vehicle is detected in the left-hand lane, or right-hand lane in left-hand traffic. This prevention function on passing applies when the speed of traffic in the adjacent lane is greater than approximately 80 km/h (50 mph). In these situations, the adaptive cruise control system maintains a distance to the vehicle in front in the adjacent lane and does not accelerate to pass. In slower moving traffic, the system allows the passing but limits the speed difference.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS - DIESEL/ GASOLINE



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.



WARNING: In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle



WARNING: When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Hilly Condition Usage

Select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use adaptive cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



WARNING: Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are unpaved, or steep slopes. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive Cruise Control

 **WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

 **WARNING:** In situations with poor visibility, such as fog, heavy rain or other inclement weather, you may need to override or completely switch off the system.

When Following a Vehicle

 **WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

 **WARNING:** On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

 **WARNING:** If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h (6 mph).

 **WARNING:** The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

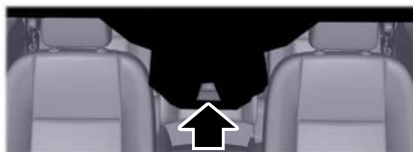
 **WARNING:** The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

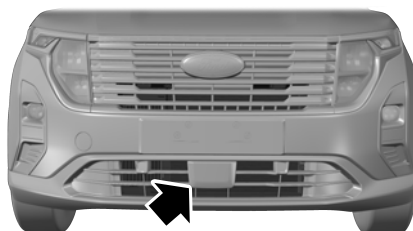
 **WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Adaptive Cruise Control



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.



The radar is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

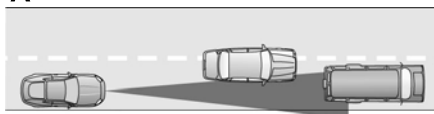
Note: Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 310).

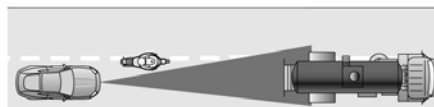
The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection Issues Can Occur:

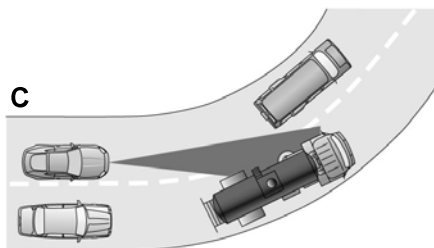
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different lane than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

Adaptive Cruise Control

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone may change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detection.

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 292).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel. See **Cruise Control** (page 292).

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to whichever is greater, the current vehicle speed, or 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode. When you are below 20 km/h when in metric units or 15 mph when in imperial units, adaptive cruise control does not activate unless you are following another vehicle.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

Adaptive Cruise Control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

The system does not operate if the vehicle speed is below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units. A tone sounds and adaptive braking releases if the vehicle speed falls below 15 mph when in imperial units or 20 km/h when in metric units.

Automatic cancellation can also occur when:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Note: *If the engine speed drops too low, the instrument cluster display advises you to shift to a lower gear.*

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

The system could cancel if any of the following occur:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.

Automatic parking brake application and cancellation occurs if any of the following occur:

- You unfasten the seatbelt and open the door after you stop your vehicle.
- Your vehicle remains stationary for longer than three minutes.

The system could deactivate or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward or downward to set the current speed.

SET-

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



Adaptive Cruise Control

A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press and release the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button upward to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

SET-

Press and release the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when you reach the speed you prefer.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the toggle button upward or downward to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO

Drive to the required speed.

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to set the current speed.

Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a vehicle in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer could vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Setting the Adaptive Cruise Speed When Your Vehicle is Stationary

1. Follow a vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Keep the brake pedal fully pressed.
3. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.

Adaptive Cruise Control

The set speed adjusts to 20 km/h (10 mph).

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Changing the Set Speed

SET+

Press the toggle button upward to increase the set speed.

SET-

Press the toggle button downward to decrease the set speed.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

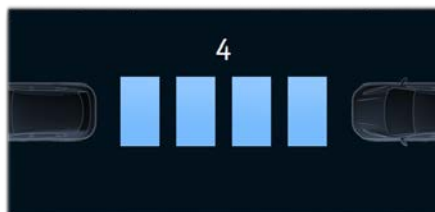
The system could apply the brakes to slow your vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed continuously displays in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP



You can decrease or increase the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front by pressing the gap control.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image. You can select four gap settings.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

When you switch the ignition on, the system automatically selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain a preset gap distance. A vehicle graphic appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal, adaptive cruise control may provide a small temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, an audible warning sounds when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

Note: *The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.*

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button, or tap the brake pedal.

The last set speed displays with a strikethrough and the last gap setting appears but does not erase.

Note: *The set speed also cancels if you press the clutch pedal for an extended period.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the information display when the system is active.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

RESUMING THE SET SPEED - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH LANE CENTERING/ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WITH STOP AND GO



Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Note: *Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.*

Resuming the Set Speed from a Complete Stop

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for less than a few seconds, your vehicle accelerates from a stationary position to follow the vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle follows a vehicle to a complete stop and remains stationary for more than a few seconds, an indicator and a message display.

Adaptive Cruise Control



Message	Details
Stopped	Cruise control does not resume automatically when this display is active.
Press RES to resume	If the lead vehicle begins to move, you are prompted to press the resume button. Press and release the button or use the accelerator pedal to resume following the lead vehicle.
Auto-Resume	Displays when driving on a limited access highway after following a vehicle to a complete stop. In this situation, the vehicle resumes following the lead vehicle without a button press or pressing the accelerator pedal. The system can remain in auto-resume state for approximately 30 seconds, after which it no longer automatically resumes.

Adaptive Cruise Control

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED



WARNING: If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.

When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Blue indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal Cruise Control**.

LANE CENTERING

HOW DOES LANE CENTERING WORK

Adaptive cruise control with lane centering uses the vehicle's front radar sensor and front windshield camera sensor, together with the steering sensor to operate.

Using these sensors, the system applies continuous steering assistance towards driving in the middle of the lane you choose on highway roads.

Note: *The gap setting for adaptive cruise control with lane centering operates in the same way as normal adaptive cruise control.*

If you drive off-center within the lane, the system sets and maintains that preferred lane position. The system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the preferred position.

Note: *The system can only set preferred lane positions within the lane.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: If the system cancels, the preferred position erases. On the next activation, the system provides continuous assistance steering torque input toward the lane center.

LANE CENTERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the system when towing a trailer. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system if any changes or modifications to the steering wheel have been made. Any changes or modifications to the steering wheel could affect the functionality or performance of the system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Adaptive cruise control precautions apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering precaution. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 294).

LANE CENTERING REQUIREMENTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Lane centering only activates when all of the following occur:

- Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is enabled in the touchscreen. See **Switching Lane Centering On and Off** (page 306).
- You have adaptive cruise control with stop and go enabled and set.
- The steering sensor detects your hands on the steering wheel.

- The system detects both lane markings when driving on a straight road.
- Your vehicle is initially centered in the lane between two visible line markings.
- No trailer is attached to the vehicle.

Note: If the system does not detect valid lane line markings, the system remains in standby until valid line markings are available.

Note: If the system does not detect your hands on the steering wheel, apply a slight force to the steering wheel.

LANE CENTERING LIMITATIONS

Adaptive cruise control limitations apply to lane centering unless stated otherwise or contradicted by a lane centering limitation. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations** (page 296).

Lane centering may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane width is too narrow or wide.
- The curve in the road is too tight.
- The system does not detect the minimum required lane markings or when lanes merge or split.
- When the required steering effort to maintain lane center exceeds the lane centering system limit.
- When driving in areas that are under construction or when road work is in progress.
- If the front windshield camera and/or the front radar are blocked.
- When using a spare tire.
- Inclement weather conditions including, but not limited to, high wind, heavy rain, and fog.
- Driving into direct sunlight.

Adaptive Cruise Control

- When modification to the steering system has been made, including alterations to the steering wheel.
- When towing a trailer.

See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 305).

Note: *The system steering assistance is limited and may not have sufficient effort for all driving situations and/or conditions, such as driving through tight curves or driving through curves at high speeds.*

Note: *In exceptional conditions, the system may deviate from the lane center.*

SWITCHING LANE CENTERING ON AND OFF

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

You can override the system at any time by steering your vehicle.

Switching Lane Centering On



Press the button on the steering wheel.



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Make sure both systems are active.

Switching Lane Centering Off



Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternatively:



Press the button on the steering wheel. A message appears on the instrument cluster display prompting you to confirm.

Note: *Lane centering turns off each time you switch your vehicle off.*

Note: *Lane centering requirements must be met before you can enable the feature. See **Lane Centering Requirements** (page 305).*

Enabling and Disabling Lane Centering

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Press **Lane Centring Assist**.

LANE CENTERING ALERTS

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

When the system is active and detects no steering activity for a period of time, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel. If you do not react to the warnings the system quickly activates and releases the brakes and slows the vehicle down to stop. The system activates the hazard lights. See **Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation** (page 306).

The system also alerts you if your vehicle crosses lane markings without detected steering activity.

Note: *The system could detect a light grip or touch on the steering wheel as hands-off driving.*

LANE CENTERING AUTOMATIC CANCELLATION

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

Adaptive Cruise Control

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, the lane markings are not available, and your hands are on the steering wheel, an audible warning sounds and a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

When an external condition cancels the system, for example, the lane markings are not available, and your hands are not on the steering wheel, the system immediately alerts you to take control of your vehicle. If this alert is ignored, the system quickly applies and releases the brakes, activates the hazard lights automatically, and slows your vehicle to a stop within the lane of travel while maintaining steering control.



If your vehicle starts to slow down after system cancellation, you must take full control of the vehicle. To re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering after cancellation, press and release the resume button or press the accelerator pedal.

Automatic cancellation can also occur if:

- The lane becomes too narrow.
- The system cannot detect valid lane markings.
- Lane markings cross each another.
- The curve of the road is too sharp.

Note: *If your vehicle slows down due to the driver inactivity within a key cycle, the system disables and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. To reset the system, stop and restart your vehicle.*

LANE CENTERING MANUAL CANCELLATION

When you perform the following actions, adaptive cruise control with lane centering cancels:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Adaptive cruise control button on the steering wheel is switched off.

The lane centering system is momentarily suppressed when either of the following actions are performed:

- Turn signal indicator is latched or tapped and the system detects that your hands are on the steering wheel.
- You steer the vehicle out of lane.

Note: *The system is able to detect your hands on the steering wheel by applying a slight force on it.*

LANE CENTERING INDICATORS



Illuminates when you switch lane centering on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Gray or white status indicates the system is on but in standby mode.

Blue status indicates the system is enabled and applying steering assistance to keep the vehicle in the center of the lane.

Gray or white status with an audible tone indicates a system automatic cancellation.

LANE CENTERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - DIESEL/GASOLINE

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
Keep hands on steering wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane centring not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, return the gear selector to park (P) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press accelerator pedal to resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

Adaptive Cruise Control

LANE CENTERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Message	Details
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	You must return your hands to the steering wheel and provide steering input to cancel the message.
Lane centring not available	Lane centering is currently not available, due to conditions that prevent the system from becoming active. To reset the system, when the vehicle is stationary, apply the electric parking brake ((P)) and turn the vehicle off. Then, restart the vehicle with your foot on the brake pedal.
Resume control	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is about to cancel. You must immediately take full control of the vehicle.
Press Accelerator Pedal to Resume	Adaptive cruise control with lane centering is in standby mode. When safe to do so, you can resume adaptive cruise control with lane centering by applying pressure on the accelerator pedal. Alternatively, you can also re-enable adaptive cruise control with lane centering by pressing the resume button on the steering wheel.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL

HOW DOES INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK

Intelligent adaptive cruise control combines speed sign recognition and navigation map data with adaptive cruise control to adjust the cruise set speed to the speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. As the system detects new speed signs, the set speed updates.

There are limitations that affect the accuracy of the speed sign recognition system and its ability to determine the current speed limit. The intelligent adaptive cruise control system and its ability to determine the current speed limit shares these limitations. See **Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations** (page 348).

Note: The adaptive cruise control gap setting operates normally when the feature is enabled.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 480). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

Adaptive Cruise Control

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The speed limit information provided by the navigation map data could be inaccurate or out of date.

The system may not detect and read speed limit signs with conditional information, for example, when a sign is flashing, during specific time ranges, or when children are present.

Note: *The system does not set the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign.*

Under certain conditions, the system may not adjust the vehicle speed until after your vehicle passes the speed limit.

SWITCHING INTELLIGENT MODE ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Adaptive cruise control**.
5. Switch **Speed Sign Recognition** on or off.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ALERTS

If the speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit below the minimum adaptive cruise control set speed, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

INTELLIGENT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS



If you select this mode, the detected speed limit sign appears below the feature icon in the instrument cluster display.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.*

Note: *The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.*

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Details
Adaptive Cruise Control not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays when the sensor has reduced visibility.
Adaptive Cruise Control not available	Displays when the system is not available.
Adaptive Cruise Control malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Normal cruise control active Adaptive braking off	You have switched normal cruise control on. Adaptive braking turns off.

Local Hazard Information

WHAT IS LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

The system is designed to provide near real-time information about the road in front of you.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION INDICATORS



Animals on the road.



Approaching vehicle coming the wrong way.



Broken down vehicle or accident.



Broken down vehicle or accident.



Fire.



General.



Hazardous driving conditions.



Objects on the road.



People on the road.



Road works.



Traffic jam.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all indicators shown are available.

ENABLING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION

Note: Make sure that the modem is enabled. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 479).

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch **Local hazard information** on.

CHECKING LOCAL HAZARD INFORMATION STATUS

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Status Information**.
3. Select **Local Hazard Information**.

Speed Limiter

HOW DOES THE SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF

LIM

Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+

SET-

Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+

SET-

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system returns to standby mode.

Note: The system does not limit the vehicle speed in standby mode.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT



Press to resume the set speed limiter.

Speed Limiter

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

 It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

WHAT IS THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER

Intelligent speed limiter is a driving aid that limits the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system.

HOW DOES THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER WORK

The system allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. For example, if the speed sign recognition system detects a 80 km/h (50 mph) speed limit, the vehicle speed is limited to 80 km/h (50 mph). You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

The controls are on the steering wheel.

A warning appears in the instrument cluster display if any of the following occur:

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.
- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.

Note: *The system does not limit the vehicle speed to speed limits shown with a supplementary traffic sign in the instrument cluster display.*

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 480). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING THE INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER ON AND OFF



Press to switch the system on. The system activates with the detected speed-limit or, if no speed-limit is detected, the current vehicle speed as the set speed. Press again to switch the system off.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

SETTING THE SPEED LIMIT

SET+ Press the toggle button upward or downward with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. The set speed is stored and displayed in the instrument cluster display.

SET-

Note: The set speed limiter adjusts when the system detects a different maximum speed limit.

Note: If the system cannot detect a maximum speed limit, the system returns to standby mode.

CHANGING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

SET+ You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the toggle button upward or downward once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the toggle button upward or downward to adjust the set speed in large increments.

SET-

CANCELING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

 Press to cancel the speed limiter and set it in standby mode. The symbol in the instrument cluster display appears gray.

RESUMING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

 Press to resume the limiter. The system sets the speed limit to the detected maximum speed limit when it resumes. The symbol in instrument cluster display appears green.

INTENTIONALLY EXCEEDING THE SET SPEED LIMIT

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit.

The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit, or when you fully release the accelerator pedal for a short period of time.

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning appears in the instrument cluster display.

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER INDICATORS

LIM It illuminates in the instrument cluster display when you switch the system on.

It illuminates grey if the system is in standby mode.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A tone sounds if:

- You unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill.
- You continue to exceed the set speed.
- The speed sign recognition system detects a speed limit outside the operational speed range, a tone sounds and the system returns to standby mode.

SWITCHING FROM INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER TO SPEED LIMITER

You can change between intelligent speed limiter and normal speed limiter using the center display. Intelligent speed limiter allows you to limit the vehicle speed to the maximum speed limit detected by the speed sign recognition system. Normal speed limiter allows you to manually limit the vehicle speed using controls on the steering wheel.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Intelligent Speed Limiter** off.

Note: *If you switch intelligent speed limiter off, the system defaults to manual speed limiter. You can manually set the speed limiter using the controls on the steering wheel.*

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTELLIGENT SPEED LIMITER – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does a warning appear in the instrument cluster display?

- The vehicle speed exceeds the current set speed.
- The system detects a maximum speed limit that is lower than the current vehicle speed.
- You intentionally exceed the set speed.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system is a driving aid designed to provide temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to alert you by providing temporary steering assistance when it detects an unintended lane departure. The system detects and tracks the road lane markings using a camera mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: *The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.*

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 60 km/h (37 mph).

The system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The system does not detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.
- You switch the turn signals on.
- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- Narrow lane width.

Lane Keeping System

The system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel twice.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information display to show the status.

Note: The system always turns on when you start your vehicle.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Mode**.
5. Select a setting.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM SETTINGS

You can select one of the two modes on the touchscreen:

- Aid mode.
- Alert and aid mode.

Note: The system remembers the last mode when you start your vehicle.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Lane-Keeping System**.
4. Press **Alert Intensity**.
5. Select a setting.

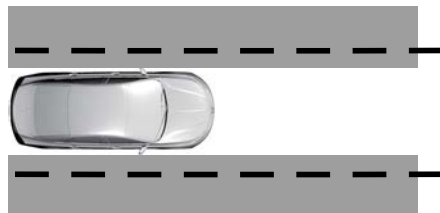
Note: This setting does not affect the aid mode.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move your vehicle towards the center of the lane.

Note: When aid mode is on and the system does not detect any steering activity for a short period of time, for example lightly holding the steering wheel, the system alerts you to put your hands on the steering wheel.

Note: The aid mode becomes active again after you have returned your vehicle to the center of the lane.

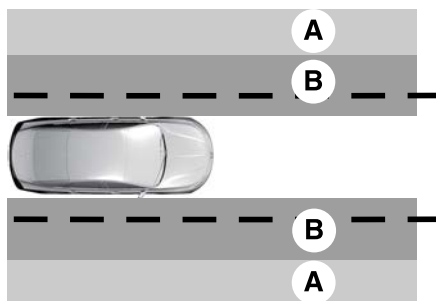
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Aid Mode and alert combines both, aid mode and steering wheel vibration alert.

HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK

Alert and aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the lane center when the system detects an unintended lane departure. If your vehicle continues drifting out of the lane, the steering wheel vibrates.



A Alert.

B Aid.

Note: The diagram illustrates general zone coverage. It does not provide exact zone parameters.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



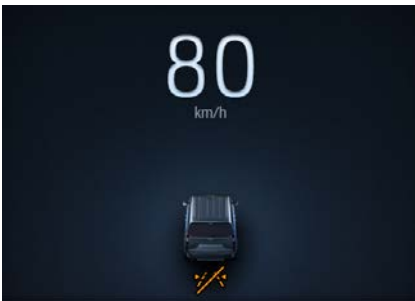
When you switch the system on and the system detects lane markings, a white indicator and white lane markings appear in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Keeping System



When the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 60 km/h (35 mph), and the system does not detect lane markings, a gray indicator and gray lane markings appear.

When the vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h (35 mph), a gray indicator appears and lane markings do not appear.



When you switch the system off, an amber indicator with a strikethrough appears.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST

Blind spot assist is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select Aid or Alert + Aid from the lane keeping system.

During lane changes, the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching your blind spot and provides a warning plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLINDSPOT ASSIST LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist.

Blind spot assist does not function under the following conditions:

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- A trailer is attached to your vehicle.

Note: Bike carriers and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike carrier or a cargo rack.

Note: The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.

Lane Keeping System

Blind spot assist could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST INDICATORS

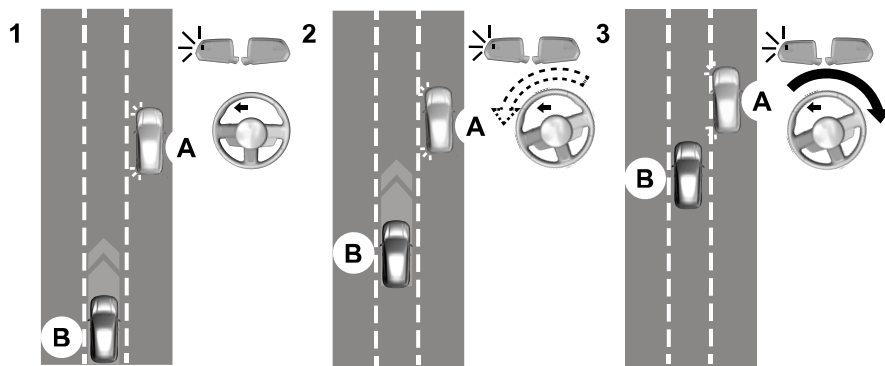


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 327).

Lane Keeping System

BLIND SPOT ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind Spot Assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage is an extension of the lane keeping system that provides a blind spot warning and steering assistance during lane changes if it detects adjacent vehicles.

Note: When attaching a trailer you must configure it so the system can recognize it. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 329).

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK



Activate and deactivate the system using the lane keeping system button on the steering wheel.

The blind spot assist feature is enabled whenever you select Aid or Alert +Aid from the lane keeping system.

During lane changes, the design of the blind spot assist feature detects vehicles in, or approaching, your blind spot and provides a warning, plus steering assistance to direct your vehicle back into your lane.

If you connect a supported trailer, the system reduces the function to only detect vehicles on both sides of the vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 329).

When active, this system functions with or without the use of turn signals and hazard flashers.

You must keep your hands on the steering wheel at all times.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

All system limitations present in the basic lane keeping system also apply to blind spot assist with trailer coverage.

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage does not function under the following conditions:

Lane Keeping System

- When none or only one of the two lane markings are detected.
- One or both rear radar sensors become blocked or faulty.
- The attached trailer is not correctly configured or it is not supported by the system. See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 329).

Note: *Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have reduced performance if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not recognize the trailer, if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors. We recommend to switch off blind spot assist with trailer coverage if you attach a trailer without electrical connectors.*

Blind spot assist with trailer coverage could have difficulty detecting hazards under the following conditions:

- If a vehicle is approaching in an adjacent lane at a relative speed much higher than your vehicle.
- Bad weather conditions are present that obstruct the sensors.
- Attaching bike carriers or cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor.

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE INDICATORS

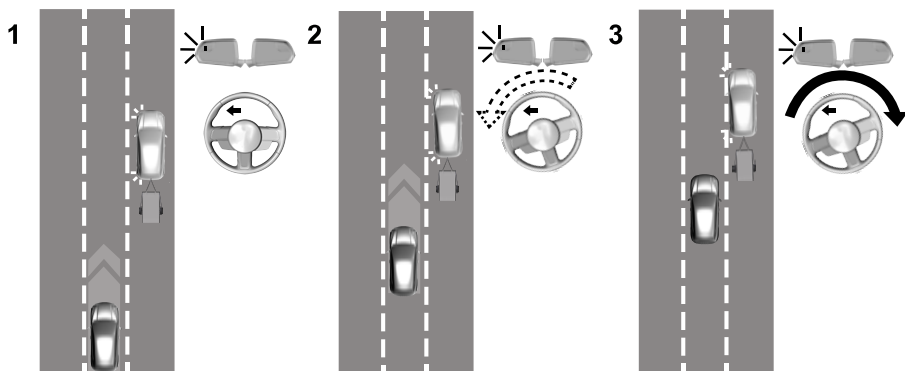


Diagram 1: Vehicle A uses its left turn signal preparing to change from the right lane to the middle lane. Vehicle B is already in the middle lane and just entered Vehicle A's blind spot causing the blind spot information system alert indicator to flash on the exterior mirror.

Diagram 2: The driver of Vehicle A begins to steer into the center lane not aware of Vehicle B.

Diagram 3: Blind spot assist counter steers to help alert the driver of Vehicle A to direct their vehicle back into the right lane to help avoid a possible collision with Vehicle B.

Lane Keeping System

The lane keeping aid warning lamp or yellow lane marking in your instrument cluster indicate blind spot assist with trailer coverage activation. In addition, the blind spot information system alert indicator

flashes on the exterior mirror on the same side as the detection. For more information See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 327).

BLIND SPOT ASSIST WITH TRAILER COVERAGE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Blind Spot Assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer wider than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is longer than 10 m (33 ft) to your vehicle. See Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage (page 329).
Blind Spot Assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Lane-Keeping System malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Camera Temporarily Not Available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front Camera Low Visibility Clean Screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep Hands on Steering Wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

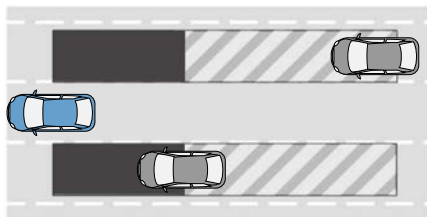
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to detect vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m (13 ft) beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m (59 ft) beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h (30 mph) to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS - DIESEL/GASOLINE

The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

Blind Spot Information System

Note: The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

Note: The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system does not operate in reverse (R) or when you apply the electric parking brake ((P)).

Note: The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It is not designed to detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructures.

Note: The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by us, the system turns off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - DIESEL/GASOLINE, MANUAL TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: The system does not operate in reverse (R).

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - DIESEL/GASOLINE, AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: The system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system turns on when all of the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: The system does not operate in reverse (R) or when you apply the electric parking brake ((P)).

Blind Spot Information System

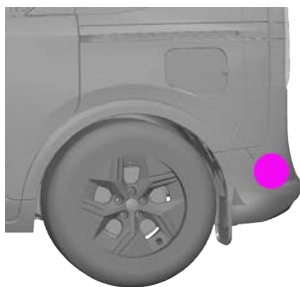
SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Blind Spot Information System** on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates and a message displays. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

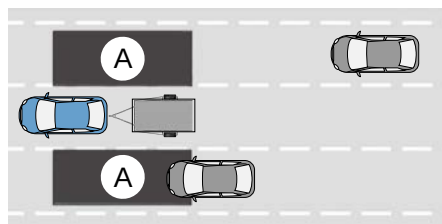
Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display. The alert indicators remain illuminated but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE



The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE WORK

The blind spot information system with trailer coverage is designed to detect vehicles that could have entered the blind spot zone. The detection area is on both sides of your vehicle and trailer, extending rearward from the exterior mirrors to the end of your trailer. When you attach a trailer and have set up a trailer, the blind spot information system with trailer tow becomes active when driving forward above 10 km/h (6 mph).

Blind Spot Information System

You can set up the trailer length, select a trailer or switch blind spot information system with trailer tow off.

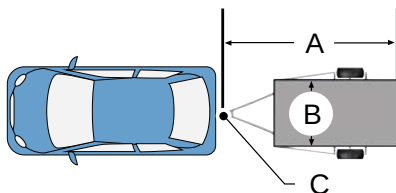
Note: *The system remembers the last trailer setting when you start your vehicle.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WITH TRAILER COVERAGE LIMITATIONS

Some trailers may cause a slight change in system performance:

- Wide box trailers, especially those wider than the towing vehicle, may cause false alerts to occur when driving next to infrastructure or near parked cars. A false alert may also occur while making a 90-degree turn or driving through a roundabout.
- Wide trailers that have a total length greater than 6 m (20 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle is passing at high speed.
- Box trailers that have a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause early alerts when you pass a vehicle.
- Clam shell or V-Nose box trailers with a width greater than 2.4 m (7.9 ft) may cause delayed alerts when a vehicle traveling the same speed as your vehicle merges lanes.

SETTING A TRAILER LENGTH



- A Trailer length.
- B Trailer width.
- C Trailer hitch.

The system operates only if the trailer front width is less than 2.4 m (7.9 ft), and the total length from the trailer hitch to the rear of the trailer is less than 10 m (33 ft).

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Add trailer** and follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Press **Trailer BLIS** and follow the instructions on the screen.

Note: *Proper measurement and measurement entry are required for the system to function as designed.*

Note: *If you attach load carriers such as bike racks or cargo racks with electrical lighting, enter a length of 1 m (3 ft). Cross Traffic Alert remains on.*

SELECTING A TRAILER

If you select a trailer in the center display prior to connecting a trailer, the system loads that configuration and an information message appears in the instrument cluster display when you connect the trailer.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

Blind Spot Information System

2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Select Active Trailer**.
4. Select an available trailer.

Note: The system could not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



When the system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signals on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates and a message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system detects a fault. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
BLIS malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If you deactivate the blind spot information system but blind spot assist remains active the following messages are shown.

Message	Details
Blind Spot Assist not available Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Blind Spot Assist not available Side sensor blocked	Displays if the blind spot information system sensors are blocked.
Blind Spot Assist System malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Exit Warning

HOW DOES EXIT WARNING WORK

When exit warning detects traffic objects such as vehicles, cyclists, scooters and motorcycles that approach your vehicle from the rear, it provides visual and audible alerts as occupants open a door to exit the vehicle. The exit warning zones are along the left and right sides of your vehicle and extend slightly beyond a fully open door. The exit warning system becomes active when you switch your vehicle on and operates in any gear position when the vehicle is not moving.

Note: *The system cannot detect all types of traffic objects, especially objects that are slowly moving or stationary.*

Note: *While this system may provide a reminder, vehicle occupants are responsible for opening the door and exiting the vehicle with care.*

EXIT WARNING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The exit warning system becomes active once you have started your vehicle and the vehicle is not moving. Exit warning is only active when your vehicle is on.



WARNING: Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

EXIT WARNING LIMITATIONS

Exit warning shuts off approximately three minutes after your vehicle is switched off, or immediately after you lock your doors. When the vehicle battery is low and your vehicle is switched off, exit warning shuts off to conserve battery power. When exit warning turns off, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: *Do not use exit warning as a replacement for paying attention when exiting your vehicle.*

Note: *The system does not prevent contact with other vehicles by closing the doors automatically.*

Note: *The system may not inform and/or alert you if a traffic object is approaching too quickly or if the parking position prevents detection.*

Exit Warning

EXIT WARNING INDICATORS



When exit warning detects an approaching traffic object on one side, the corresponding alert indicator in the exterior mirror is illuminated. If exit warning alert is active, the same alert indicator flashes. See **Blind Spot Information System Indicators** (page 331).

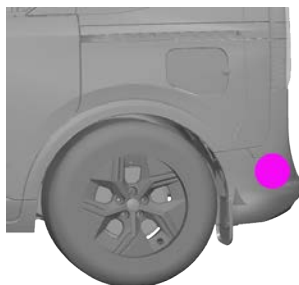
In addition to the mirror indicator there is also visual indicator in the touchscreen noting what side a traffic object has been detected on.

SWITCHING EXIT WARNING ON AND OFF

You can switch the exit warning system on and off by using the touchscreen. From the Driver Assistance menu, press Exit Warning to switch on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

LOCATING THE EXIT WARNING SENSORS



The sensors are mounted behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

EXIT WARNING – TROUBLESHOOTING

EXIT WARNING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Right side: Check surroundings before exiting	Right exit warning alert is active.
Left side: Check surroundings before exiting	Left exit warning alert is active.
Exit Warning turning off Exit safely	Displays when the exit warning system turns off or shuts down.
Exit Warning system malfunction	Displays when the exit warning system detects any system error.

Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

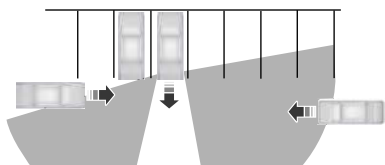
The system is designed to alert you of road users and traffic objects approaching from the rear sides and from behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

If you continue to reverse at a speed equal or higher than 2 km/h (1 mph) after the system alerts you, the system is designed to apply the brakes if it still detects approaching road users or traffic objects. If the system applies the brakes, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

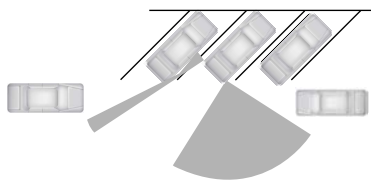
Note: *There could be instances when unexpected or unwanted braking occurs. You can override this by firmly pressing the accelerator pedal.*

HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross traffic alert is designed to detect road users or traffic objects approaching above a minimum speed of 8 km/h (5 mph). Coverage can decrease when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

Note: *Slowly reversing helps to increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

The system only applies the brakes for a short period of time when an event occurs. Take action as soon as you notice the system applying the brakes in order to remain in control of your vehicle, the system does not do this for you.

Cross Traffic Alert View

When you shift into reverse (R) and the system detects road users or traffic objects approaching from the sides behind your vehicle, it automatically activates the 180 degree camera view. When the intended path is clear of cross traffic, the camera automatically switches back to the previous view.

Note: *Depending on your vehicle options and region, the cross traffic alert view may not be available.*

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: Some situations and objects prevent hazard detection, for example, inclement weather, unconventional vehicle types and pedestrians. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use the system with accessories that extend beyond the front or rear of your vehicle, for example a trailer hitch or bike rack. The system is not able to make corrections for the additional length of the accessories.



WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.

Note: *Certain add-on devices around the bumper or fascia may cause unexpected system behavior. For example, large trailer hitches, bicycle or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, fuel containers, bumper covers or any other device may block the normal detection zone of the system. Remove the add-on device to prevent unexpected system behavior.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia leaving it misaligned or bent, it could alter the sensing zone causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Note: *Vehicle loading and suspension changes can impact the angle of the sensors and may change the normal detection zone of the system resulting in inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alerts.*

Cross Traffic Alert

Note: You may experience reduced system performance on road surfaces that limit deceleration. For example, roads with ice, loose gravel, mud or sand.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Traffic objects approach at speeds less than 8 km/h (5 mph) or greater than 60 km/h (37 mph).
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h (7 mph).
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

Note: The system does not alert for small stationary and moving objects.

Cross Traffic Alert Limitations with a Trailer Attached

The system remains on when you attach a trailer to vehicles with blind spot information system with trailer coverage under the following conditions:

- You connect a bike rack or cargo rack with a maximum length of 1 m (3 ft).
- You set the trailer length to 1 m (3 ft) in the touchscreen.

Note: The system may not correctly operate when towing a trailer. For vehicles with an approved trailer tow module and tow bar, the system turns off when you attach a trailer greater than 1 m (3 ft). For vehicles with an aftermarket trailer tow module or tow bar, we recommend that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

Note: When you switch cross traffic alert on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on.

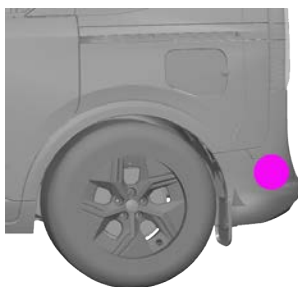
Switching Cross Traffic Alert View on and off

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross-Traffic Alert View** on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region, the cross traffic alert view may not be available.

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear bumper on both sides of your vehicle.

Cross Traffic Alert

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Blocked sensors could affect system performance.

If the sensors are blocked, a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the system detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an alert indicator illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror. At the same time, arrows appear in the touchscreen to show from which side the vehicle is approaching.

Note: The displayed indicator may vary depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type.

If the system malfunctions, a message appears. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you or apply the brakes, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Cross-Traffic Alert Press OK to close	Displays when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross-Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Displays if the cross traffic alert system sensors are blocked. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross-Traffic malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross-Traffic Alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.
Cross traffic alert Applying brakes	Displays if the system applies the brakes. Check for approaching traffic.

Cross Traffic Alert

Note: *There could be different information messages if your vehicle has reverse brake assist. See **Reverse Brake Assist – Information Messages** (page 273).*

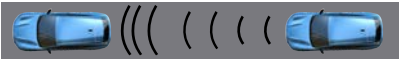
Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

Pre-collision assist detects other road users and warns you of their presence. If you do not respond, the system automatically applies the brakes.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system is active at 5 km/h (3 mph) and above.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, a pedestrian or a cyclist within your driving path, the system is designed to provide three levels of functionality.

Level of Functionality	Details
Alert	When activated, a warning flashes and an audible warning sounds.
Brake support	The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.
Automatic emergency braking	The system is designed to apply the brakes if it detects a crash is imminent. This may help reduce impact or avoid the crash.

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles

Pre-Collision Assist - Oncoming Vehicles expands the function of pre-collision assist to oncoming vehicles within your same lane. The system can help to reduce the severity of a crash by providing a warning to you as well as automatically applying the brakes. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle above 30 km/h (19 mph).

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WITH INTERSECTION ASSIST WORK

The system operates when you turn across the path of an oncoming vehicle, or a pedestrian or cyclist crossing the road. Detection of oncoming vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). Detection of crossing pedestrians or cyclists at an intersection is active if you are driving your vehicle at

Pre-Collision Assist

speeds up to 30 km/h (19 mph). The system also operates when you approach the path of a crossing vehicle. Detection of crossing vehicles is active if you are driving your vehicle at speeds up to 65 km/h (40 mph).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if your vehicle has a non-Ford windshield. Do not carry out windshield repairs in the area around the sensor.

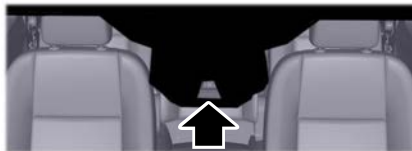
WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, pedestrians or cyclists with complex backgrounds, running pedestrians or fast moving cyclists, partly obscured pedestrians or cyclists, pedestrians or cyclists that the system cannot distinguish from a group. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: The Pre-Collision Assist system with brake support cannot help prevent all collisions. Do not rely on this system to replace your judgment and the need to maintain correct distance and speed.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

The system is not designed to detect animals.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



Pre-Collision Assist

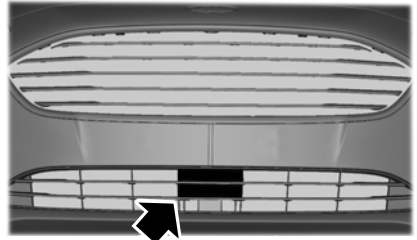
The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.



LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL



The camera is mounted behind the interior mirror.

The radar sensor is behind the front grille below the license plate.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this may cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

Blocked sensors could affect system accuracy. A message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

DISTANCE INDICATION - DIESEL/GASOLINE

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays in the instrument cluster display the time gap to vehicles ahead of you traveling in the same direction.

Note: The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

Pre-Collision Assist

SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.

4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h (62 mph)	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m (82.0 ft) .	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m (55.8–82.0 ft).	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m (55.8 ft).	Less than 0.6 seconds.

FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

WHAT IS FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

A warning flashes and an audible warning sounds if your vehicle rapidly approaches another vehicle, to warn you of the risk of a crash with the vehicle in front of you.

ADJUSTING THE SENSITIVITY OF FORWARD COLLISION WARNING

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.

4. Press **Alert Sensitivity**.

5. Select a setting.

AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking is an active safety system that activates the vehicle brakes when a potential crash is detected.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Driver Assistance**.

3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.

4. Switch **Automatic Emergency Braking** on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

Pre-Collision Assist

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: Road users are defined as pedestrians or bicyclists in your vehicle's path or another stationary vehicle in the same lane or a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as you. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 340).

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.

Note: Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering Assist** on or off.

Note: Evasive steering assist turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If you turn automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist also turns off.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



It illuminates in the instrument cluster display to indicate if the system is disabled, unavailable, or temporarily degraded due to external environmental conditions.

Note: No action is needed if the warning lamp illuminates without a corresponding information message. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 340).

Pre-Collision Assist

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Pre-Collision Assist not available	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Pre-Collision Assist not available Sensor blocked	The sensors are dirty. Clean the sensors. Check the list of possible causes and actions in the table below. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The following table lists possible causes and details for when a blocked sensor message could display.

Cause	Details
The surface of the radar in the radiator grille is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the radiator grille in front of the radar or remove any obstruction.
The surface of the radar is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the system to detect that there is no obstruction.
Heavy rain, spray, snow, or fog is interfering with the radar signals.	The system is temporarily disabled. The system should reactivate after a short period of time when the weather conditions improve.
The radar is misaligned.	Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.	Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.
The windshield in front of the camera is clean but the message remains in the display.	Wait for a short period of time. It may take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.
Excessive heat around the camera.	Wait for a short period of time. The message should clear when the temperature around the camera decreases.

Driver Alert

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it calculates that you are becoming drowsy, if your driving deteriorates or if you are driving while distracted.

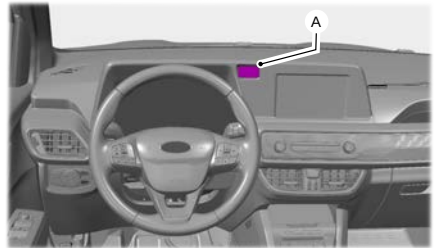
HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK - DIESEL/GASOLINE

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

If your vehicle has a driver facing camera, driver alert determines if you are driving while distracted by monitoring your eyes and head position, when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph). If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road by sending a warning. If you continue to not look at the road, another warning appears.



A Driver facing camera.

Note: The position of the camera is mirrored in vehicles with right-hand drive.

Note: The driver facing camera does not capture facial features or other personal data, it only tracks head position and eye movements.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system calculates your alertness level based upon your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).

The warning system has two stages:

1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.

Driver Alert

If your vehicle has a driver facing camera, driver alert determines if you are driving while distracted by monitoring your eyes and head position, when the vehicle speed is greater than approximately 20 km/h (12 mph). If the system determines you are distracted, it alerts you to return your eyes to the road by sending a warning. If you continue to not look at the road, another warning appears.



A Driver facing camera.

Note: The position of the camera is mirrored in vehicles with right-hand drive.

Note: The driver facing camera does not capture facial features or other personal data, it only tracks head position and eye movements.

DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.



WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.



WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by Ford.



WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.



WARNING: Obstructions to the driver facing camera or infrared lighting could prevent the system from properly operating. Keep the camera and lighting areas free from obstruction. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Driver Alert

Note: The driver facing camera may not work properly if you wear glasses or your face is partially covered. This coverage could be a mask or a beard.

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: The system turns on automatically after every ignition cycle.

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS



If the system detects an issue with the driver facing camera, for example an electrical failure or a blockage in the field of view of the camera, this symbol appears in the instrument cluster display.



If the front windshield camera detects an issue, for example an electrical failure or a blockage caused by dirt or ice in front of the field of view of the camera, this symbol appears in the instrument cluster display.

If the symbols continue to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Displays when we recommend that you take a break due to low alertness levels.
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Displays when you must take a break due to low alertness levels.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Watch the road	The system has detected that you are distracted. Keep your eyes on the road.
Driver-Facing Camera cannot detect face See manual	The system cannot detect the face. Ensure that your face can be detected by the driver facing camera.

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and region not all messages are available.

Traffic Sign Recognition

WHAT IS TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION

The system is designed to detect traffic signs to inform you of the current speed limit, overtaking and right of way regulations.

HOW DOES TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION WORK

Traffic sign recognition uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect traffic signs.

Map data could influence sign detection. Stored traffic sign data could influence the indicated speed limit value.

Note: *This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 480). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.*

The system detects recognizable traffic signs, for example:

- Speed limit signs.
- No overtaking signs.
- Speed limit cancellation signs.
- No overtaking cancellation signs.
- Stop signs.
- Yield signs.

Note: *Detection of stop and yield signs may not be available in your vehicle.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: *Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.*

Note: *Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.*

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION LIMITATIONS

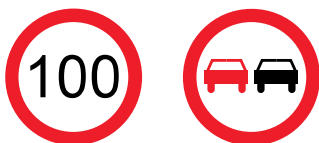
The system could not detect all speed signs and could incorrectly read signs.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from correctly functioning.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

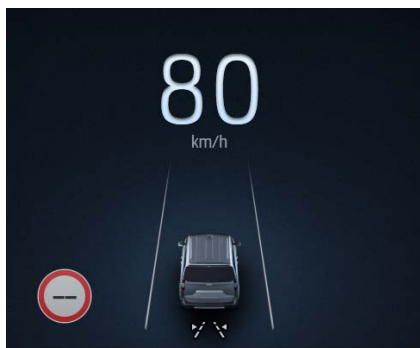
Traffic Sign Recognition

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION INDICATORS

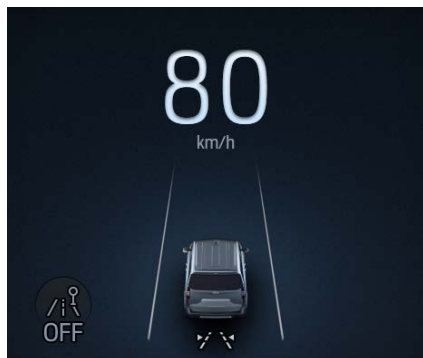


The system can display two traffic signs in parallel.

You can view the status at any time using the instrument cluster display.



When the system does not detect a speed sign, for example, navigation map data is not available for a short period of time, or the system has no input, a speed sign with two hyphens appears in the instrument cluster display.



When the system detects an issue, for example, navigation map data is not available for a longer period of time, or the camera is blocked or misaligned, an off symbol appears in the instrument cluster display. If the symbol continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

The system displays recognizable traffic signs in two stages as follows:

1. All new traffic signs appear brighter than the others in the display.
2. After a predetermined time they display normally.

If the system detects a supplementary traffic sign, it displays below the respective traffic sign. For example, when passing a speed limit for vehicles with a trailer sign.

Note: If your vehicle has a navigation system, stored traffic sign data may influence the indicated speed limit value.

Traffic Sign Recognition

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION SETTINGS

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Speed Warning

You can set the system speed warning to alert you when the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit recognized by the system.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Speed Warning** on or off.



Press and hold the button to temporarily switch the speed warning off.

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the system automatically switches on after every ignition cycle.

Setting the Traffic Sign Recognition Chime for Speed Limit Change

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Speed Limit Assist**.
4. Switch **Chime for Speed Limit Change** on or off.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Wrong Way Alert

WHAT IS WRONG WAY ALERT

The system is designed to alert you if it detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

HOW DOES WRONG WAY ALERT WORK

The system uses a sensor behind the interior mirror to detect no entry signs and uses information from the navigation system.

If the system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and a tone sounds. The audio system volume mutes and navigation system guidance pauses.

Note: Traffic sign data provided by the navigation system contains information integrated to the data carrier release.

Note: This feature uses map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version. See **Connected Vehicle Settings** (page 480). If your market is not connected, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to perform the periodical updates.

WRONG WAY ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: Do not carry out windshield repairs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor.

Note: Always fit Ford approved parts when replacing headlamp bulbs. Other bulbs could reduce system performance.

Note: In exceptional conditions, the system could alert you even if you are not driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road.

WRONG WAY ALERT LIMITATIONS

The system could not detect all traffic signs and could incorrectly read signs.

If your vehicle has a suspension kit not approved by us, the system could not correctly function.

The system does not operate in some countries. We recommend that you check system availability before use.

In cold and severe weather conditions the system could not function. Rain, snow, spray and large contrasts in lighting can all prevent the sensor from functioning correctly.

The system could not correctly operate in areas under construction or new infrastructure.

SWITCHING WRONG WAY ALERT ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Wrong Way Alert** on or off.

Wrong Way Alert

WRONG WAY ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

WRONG WAY ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check driving direction	The system detects that you are driving the wrong way on a freeway exit road. Ensure you are driving in the correct direction.

Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate or the rear cargo doors to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate or the rear cargo doors, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture be careful not to damage the interior trim.

REAR LOADSPACE HATCH

You can carry long items inside your vehicle by opening the access hatch in the bulkhead.

Note: Fully open the access hatch when in use.



ROOF RACK

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.



WARNING: When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

For correct roof rack system function, you must place loads directly on crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails.

Load Carrying

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel.*

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check to make sure the straps are secure before driving and at each fuel stop.

REMOVING AND INSTALLING ROOF RACK CROSSBARS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - DIESEL/GASOLINE

Tire size	Maximum Roof Load (Including Roof Rack) kg (lb)
R15/R16	75 (165)
R17	50 (110)

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Tire size	Maximum Roof Load (Including Roof Rack) kg (lb)
R16/R17	75 (165)

TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER

TOW BAR MOUNTED CARRIER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Cargo accessory devices mounted to the hitch can change the weight distribution of the vehicle. Loaded vehicles, with more rear weight, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Load Carrying

When using a tow bar mounted carrier, consider the following:

- Carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any cargo carrying device.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure to properly attach the cargo carrying device, and securely attach all equipment to the cargo carrying device.
- When loading a cargo accessory device to the hitch, do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight or maximum front and rear axle weights on the vehicle as defined on the vehicle identification plate. Mounting cargo accessory devices to the hitch limits the passenger and cargo capacity inside the vehicle.
- If you are using a bike carrier, the maximum allowed weight is 75 kg (165 lb) including the bikes and the carrier.
- Load the heaviest item closest to your vehicle.

TOW BAR MOUNTED LOAD CAPACITIES

The maximum accessory hitch load for cargo carrying devices is 75 kg (165 lb) unless restricted by lower hitch capacity or cargo carrying device capacity. We recommend using a hitch authorized by us which meets these load requirements. Do not exceed any certified vehicle loads as defined on the Vehicle Identification Plate.

Luggage Compartment

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.



WARNING: Make sure that you fully close the liftgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the liftgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.

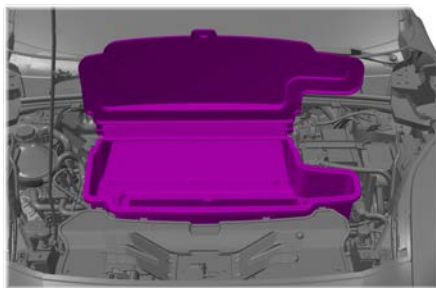
OPENING THE FRUNK - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

OPENING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

Manually Opening the Frunk

1. Open the hood of your vehicle to access the frunk. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 404).

Note: Make sure to support the hood with the strut.



2. Lift the lid of the frunk manually.

CLOSING THE FRUNK - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

CLOSING THE FRUNK FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

1. Manually lower the lid of the frunk until it is fully closed. Make sure nothing is obstructing the path.
2. Close the hood of your vehicle. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 404).

Note: Make sure to securely close the frunk before closing the hood.

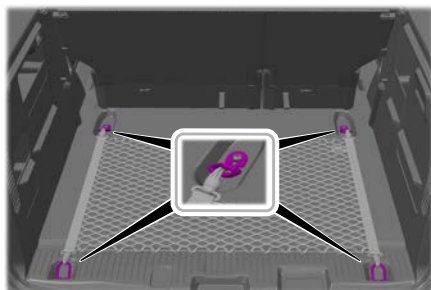
Luggage Compartment

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT CARGO NET - BUS



WARNING: This net is not designed to restrain objects during a collision or heavy braking.

The luggage floor net secures lightweight objects in the luggage compartment area.



Attach the net to the anchors on both sides of the luggage compartment.

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT COVER - BUS



WARNING: Make sure that you properly secure the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



WARNING: Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

To install the luggage compartment cover:

1. Insert the luggage cover.



2. Attach the retaining cord to the holder element on the inner liftgate sheet on both sides.

Note: Make sure to support the luggage cover when inserting the retaining cords.

To remove the luggage compartment cover reverse above process.

Note: The luggage cover can be stowed in the luggage compartment.

Rear Cargo Area - Van

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

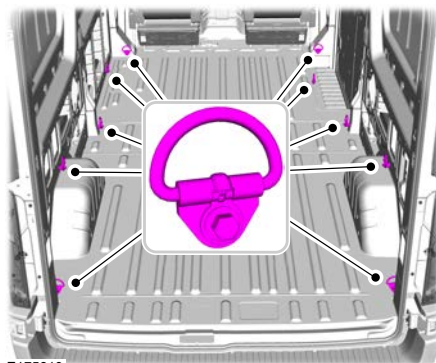
WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum load rating of the load retaining fixtures. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Check the load retaining fixtures for damage before using them. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use the load retaining fixtures for towing. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS



Note: The number of load retaining fixtures could vary depending on your vehicle model.

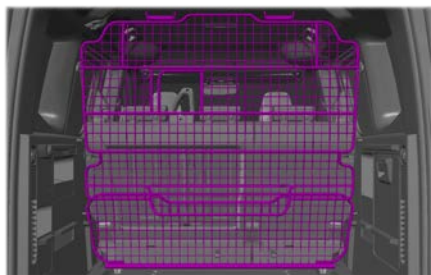
Rear Cargo Area - Van

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES

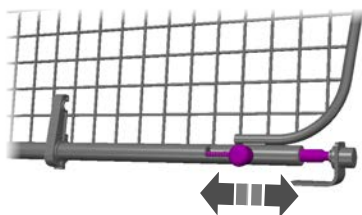
Variant	Maximum Load Value
All Van	3,000 N (675 lb)

INSTALLING AND REMOVING THE BULKHEAD

Straight Bulkhead Position



Only use this position when the second row seats are in the default upright position.



To secure the bulkhead in this position, slide the locking pins at the bottom of the bulkhead toward the sides of your vehicle. Make sure that you fully engage the catches.

To remove the bulkhead from this position, slide the locking pins at the bottom of the bulkhead toward the middle of your vehicle. Fix the locking pins in the open position by slightly turning them up while pulling them toward the middle of your vehicle.

Folded Bulkhead Position



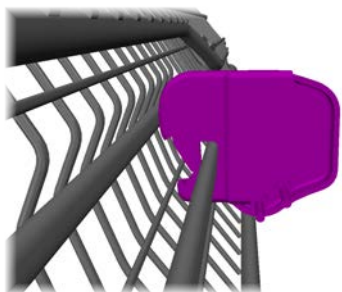
Only use this position when the second row seats are fully folded down and forward.

1. Fix the locking pins in their open position by slightly turning them up while pulling them toward the middle of your vehicle.

Rear Cargo Area - Van



2. Fold up the lower half of the folding bulkhead. Use the folded position stay clip on the bulkhead to secure it in place.



3. Secure the metal bar of the folded bulkhead to the safety latches on the back of the folded second row seats.

To remove the bulkhead from this position, pull the two release handles on the top of the folded seats upward. When the metal bar is released from the safety latches, release the stay clip and unfold the bulkhead.

Connecting a Trailer

Recognizing a Trailer

Make sure to connect the trailer to your vehicle with a proper fitting connector that supports your vehicle and the trailer functions.

1. Attach the trailer and wiring connector to your vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on.
3. Set up a profile for the trailer using the touchscreen.

Note: *If your vehicle does not recognize the trailer, press and hold the brake pedal for a few seconds or switch the turn signal lamps on for a few seconds.*

Managing Trailer Profiles

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.

You can perform multiple actions from this menu.

See **Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage** (page 329). See **Trailer Towing Navigation** (page 501).

Trailer Connection Checklist

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Towing**.
3. Press **Connection checklist**.

Trailer Lamps



WARNING: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Trailer battery charge/Trailer power feed

This feature allows the trailer's battery to charge under the following situations:

- Your vehicle is in the accessory or engine run position.
- If the vehicle's battery voltage is in optimum condition, above 12.5 volts, and the trailer's battery can still hold a charge, or is not too old.

Connecting a Trailer

CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Trailer disconnected	The system senses a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, during a given ignition cycle.
Trailer battery not charging See manual	There is a fault with your trailer battery, or your trailer battery voltage is very low.
Trailer lighting module malfunction See manual	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer brake lights malfunction Check lights	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer left indicator lights malfunction Check lights	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer right indicator lights malfunction Check lights	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Trailer park lights malfunction Check lights	Check the trailer wiring for any concerns. If the warning stays on or continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles Without: Fixed Tow Ball

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Your vehicle is not approved for trailer towing. Never tow a trailer with your vehicle.

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Fixed Tow Ball

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Make sure that the vertical load on the tow ball is between the minimum and maximum recommended weight at all times. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.

The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.

Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.

Towing a trailer changes the vehicle handling characteristics and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS - DIESEL/ GASOLINE

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% and altitudes up to 1,000 m (3,281 ft) when towing a trailer. In mountainous regions the engine performance decreases due to lower air density with increasing altitude. In high altitude regions above 1,000 m (3,281 ft), you should reduce the stipulated maximum permitted gross train weight by 10% for every additional 1,000 m (3,281 ft). See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 477).

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Do not exceed 100 km/h (60 mph) even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.

The gross train weight stated on the vehicle identification plate applies for road gradients up to 12% when towing a trailer. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 477).

Towing a trailer also depends on additional systems present in your vehicle. See **Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions** (page 295). See **Lane Centering Precautions** (page 305).

Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Fixed Tow Ball

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

LOADING YOUR TRAILER

Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unladen vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability. See **Towing Weight Capacities** (page 365).

The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight could be lower.*

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Powertrain	kg (lb)
All variants.	50 (110)

Note: *You can find the maximum permissible trailer vertical weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.*

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Use a low gear when descending a steep downhill gradient.

The stability of your vehicle to trailer combination is very much dependent on the quality of the trailer.

The electrical system on your vehicle is suitable for towing trailers with LED lamps.

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - DIESEL/GASOLINE

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weight

You can find the maximum permissible trailer weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

TOWING WEIGHT CAPACITIES - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weight

You can find the maximum permissible trailer weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

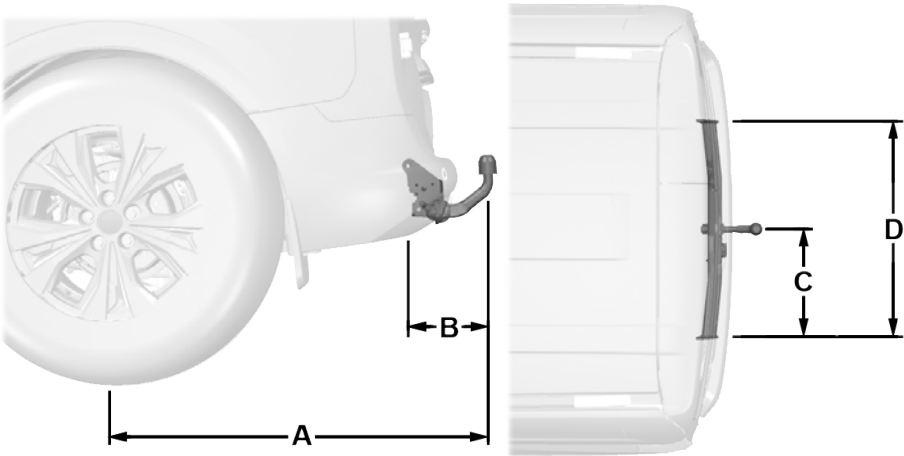
Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Fixed Tow Ball

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Powertrain	kg (lb)
Battery Electric Vehicle.	30 (66)

Note: You can find the maximum permissible trailer vertical weight for your vehicle in the Certificate of Conformity or ask from a dealer.

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS



Towing a Trailer - Vehicles With: Fixed Tow Ball

Measurement	Dimension Description	mm (in)
A	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	911 (35.9)
B	Center of tow ball to center of first attachment point.	514 (20.2)
C	Center of tow ball to side member.	556 (21.9)
D	Distance between side members.	1,113 (43.8)

Driving Hints

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C (-13°F).

DRIVING ON SNOW AND ICE



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

On ice and snow, you should drive more slowly than usual. Your vehicle has an anti-lock braking system, apply the brake pedal steadily. Do not pump the brake pedal.

BREAKING-IN - DIESEL/ GASOLINE

Tires

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Avoid heavy use of the brakes and clutch if possible for the first 160 km (100 mi) in town and for the first 1,600 km (1,000 mi) on freeways.

BREAKING-IN - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

You need to break in new tires for approximately 480 km (300 mi). During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY - DIESEL/GASOLINE

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.
- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.

Driving Hints

- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER - DIESEL/GASOLINE



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Note: *Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

DRIVING THROUGH SHALLOW WATER - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep or flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Note: *Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.*

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction could be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

Driving Hints

- Moderately press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

Check the function of the following:

- Horn
- Exterior lights

ELECTRIC VEHICLE

MAXIMIZING YOUR DRIVING RANGE

Driving in Cold Weather

Keep your vehicle charged before heading out into cold weather.

Use the heated seats and steering wheel for comfort along with moderate cabin temperature and fan settings to reduce energy needed for climate control.

Note: Lower cabin temperature settings on the climate control system results in better trip range.

Preconditioning Your Vehicle

You can precondition your vehicle by using departure and comfort settings to warm or cool your cabin and the high voltage battery when your vehicle is plugged in. By using energy from your charging source prior to your departure, battery temperature can be managed for best driving performance and less energy will be needed for heating or cooling of the cabin at the start of your drive. This helps maximize your driving range. See **Charging Settings** (page 238).

Note: You can also access departure and comfort settings using the Ford app.

Parking Your Vehicle

At temperatures just above the freezing point and lower, plug your vehicle in when not in use to maintain high voltage battery performance.

When possible park your vehicle under a covered area or in a garage. This will help to moderate temperatures which affect performance of the high voltage battery and require energy to heat or cool the cabin.

Driving Style

Range is reduced when driving aggressively or at consistently high speeds. Aggressive driving for extended periods could also result in reducing your battery's efficiency and lifespan.

FLOOR MATS



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Driving Hints



WARNING: Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

If the driver side floor mat is not securely fastened, remove it, and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible. Do not drive with a loose floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

HIGH VOLTAGE BATTERY VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

In the event of damage or fire involving an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle:

- Assume the high-voltage battery and associated components are energized and fully charged.
- Exposed electrical components, wires and high-voltage batteries present potential high-voltage shock hazards.
- Venting vapors from the high-voltage battery are potentially toxic and flammable.
- Physical damage to the vehicle or high-voltage battery could result in immediate or delayed release of toxic, flammable gases and fire.

Vehicle information and general safety practices include reviewing the owner's manual and becoming familiar with your vehicle's safety information and recommended safety practices.

Crashes

A crash or impact significant enough to require an emergency response for conventional vehicles would also require the same response for an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle.

If Possible:

1. Move your vehicle to a safe, nearby location and remain on the scene.
2. Roll down the windows before you switch your vehicle off.
3. Apply the electric parking brake, switch off the vehicle, activate the hazard flashers and move your key(s) at least 5 m (16 ft) away from the vehicle.

Always:

- Call emergency assistance if needed and advise that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
- Avoid contact with leaking fluids and gases, and remain out of the way of oncoming traffic until emergency responders arrive.
- When emergency responders arrive, tell them that the vehicle involved is an electric vehicle or hybrid-electric vehicle.

Fires

As with any vehicle, call emergency assistance immediately if you see sparks, smoke or flames coming from the vehicle. Remain a safe distance from the vehicle and try to stay clear of the smoke.

1. Exit the vehicle immediately.
2. Advise emergency assistance that an electric or hybrid-electric vehicle is involved.
3. As with any vehicle fire, do not inhale smoke, vapors or gas from the vehicle, as they may be hazardous.

Post-Incident

1. Do not store a severely damaged vehicle with a lithium-ion battery inside a structure or within 15 m (49 ft) of any structure or vehicle.
2. Make sure that passenger and luggage compartments remain ventilated.
3. Call emergency assistance if you observe leaking fluids, sparks, smoke or flames, or hear gurgling or bubbling from the high-voltage battery.

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - DIESEL/GASOLINE



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries.



WARNING: All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery



WARNING: Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approximately 0°C (+32°F).



WARNING: The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.



WARNING: A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.



WARNING: Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.

Crash and Breakdown Information



WARNING: Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.



WARNING: Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.



WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries.



WARNING: All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery



WARNING: Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approximately 0°C (+32°F).



WARNING: The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.



WARNING: A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.



WARNING: Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.



WARNING: Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.

Crash and Breakdown Information



WARNING: Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.

Note: This procedure is only for the 12 volt battery.

Note: Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery that is under the hood. The 12 volt battery controls the switches and contacts that engage the high voltage battery. Do not jump start the high voltage battery using a standard 12 volt battery. Tow your vehicle to an authorized dealer if the high voltage battery does not accept a regular charge.

Note: Do not attempt to push start your vehicle. You could cause transmission damage.

Note: Do not disconnect the 12 volt battery from your vehicle electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE



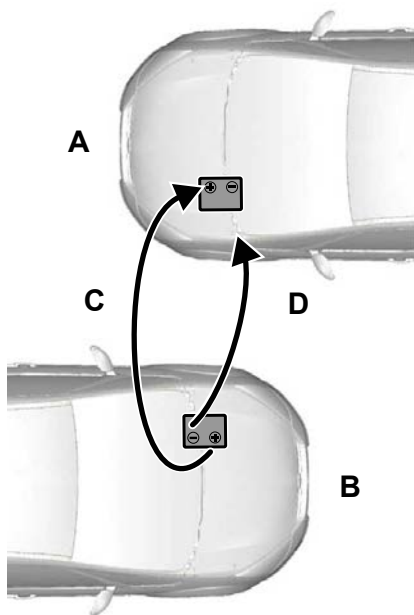
WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle electrical system.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

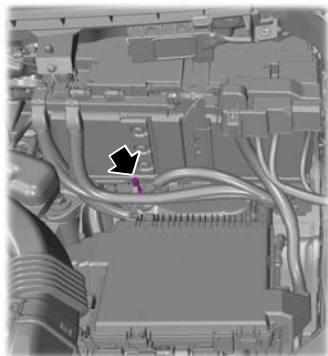


- A Vehicle with the discharged battery.
- B Vehicle with the booster battery.
- C Positive jumper cable.
- D Negative jumper cable.

1. Switch the vehicle off and any electrical equipment.
2. Lift up the battery positive connection point cover. For item location, refer to the appropriate under hood overview. See **Under Hood Overview** (page 405).

Crash and Breakdown Information

3. Connect one end of the positive jumper cable to the positive terminal of the discharged battery and the other end to the positive terminal of the booster battery.



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

4. Connect one end of the negative jumper cable to the negative terminal of the booster battery or to a suitable ground point and the other end to the ground point on your vehicle.

To start your vehicle

1. Run the booster vehicle at a moderately high speed.
2. Switch on the vehicle with the discharged battery.
3. When the vehicle starts, run the vehicles for three minutes before you disconnect the jumper cables.

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on before you disconnect the jumper cables. The peak voltage could cause the bulbs to fail.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, or the unlock button on the remote control, or the panic button on the remote control or turn your vehicle off and on twice to switch the system off.

Note: The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.

POST-COLLISION BRAKING

How Does Post-Collision Braking Work

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Post-Collision Braking Limitations

Post-collision braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

Overriding Post-Collision Braking

You can override post-collision braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

Post-Collision Braking Indicators



It flashes when a post-collision braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF - DIESEL/GASOLINE

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The system deactivates the high voltage system in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

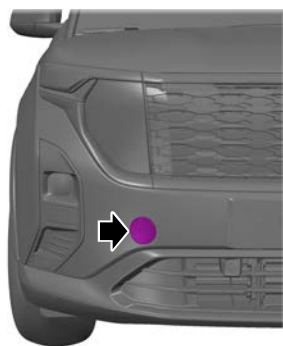
RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch your vehicle off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch your vehicle off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Note: *If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



1. Gently press and release the towing eye attachment point cover at the position indicated.

Crash and Breakdown Information

2. Gently pull it straight out.

Note: The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT

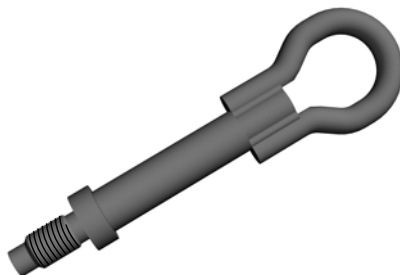


1. Gently press and release the towing eye attachment point cover at the position indicated.

2. Gently pull it straight out.

Note: The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

LOCATING THE TOWING EYE



Towing eye location in Van:

- Behind the driver seat.

Towing eye location in Kombi:

- In the cargo area, in the drawer on the rear-right side of the trim panel.

Note: You must carry the towing eye in your vehicle at all times.

INSTALLING THE TOWING EYE

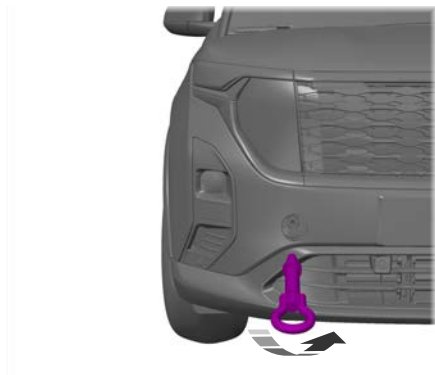


WARNING: Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Crash and Breakdown Information



1. Carefully remove the cover.
2. Install the towing eye.

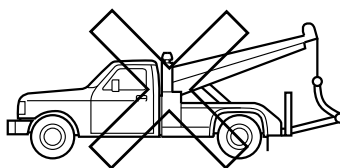
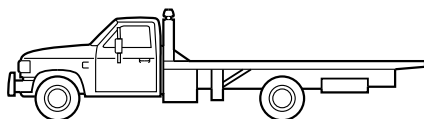
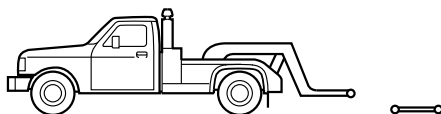
Note: The towing eye has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it.

Note: The towing eye attachment point cover has a small lanyard to keep it attached to the bumper.

Note: If your vehicle has a tow bar, use this to tow other vehicles.

Make sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend the use of a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment to tow your vehicle. Do not tow with a slingbelt. We do not approve a slingbelt towing procedure. Vehicle damage may occur if towed incorrectly, or by any other means.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

Towing your vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground. This prevents damage to the mechanical systems and vehicle.

Crash and Breakdown Information

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the front, place the rear wheels on a tow dolly.

When using wheel lift equipment to tow the vehicle from the rear, place the front wheels on a tow dolly.

FAIL-SAFE COOLING

WHAT IS FAIL-SAFE COOLING

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs due to overheating.

The fail-safe distance depends on outside temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

HOW DOES FAIL-SAFE COOLING WORK

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine.

Note: *Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.*

DRIVING WHEN FAIL-SAFE MODE IS ACTIVATED



WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine may operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

Crash and Breakdown Information

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *Driving your vehicle without repair increases the chance of engine damage.*

FAIL-SAFE COOLING INDICATORS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the instrument cluster display.

Towing Your Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle becomes inoperable without access to wheel dollies or a vehicle transport trailer, it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground, regardless of the drivetrain, under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward for towing in a forward direction.
- You switch Emergency Tow on.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Switching Emergency Tow On

1. Properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.
2. Switch your vehicle on in accessory mode. See **Starting and Powering Off** (page 184).

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 131). See **Climate Control** (page 134). See **Climate Control** (page 139). See **Climate Control** (page 143).

3. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
4. Select Settings.
5. Select Vehicle Settings.
6. Select Emergency Tow.
7. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.
8. Press and hold the brake pedal.
9. Shift into neutral (N).

Note: A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display.

10. Switch your vehicle off.

Switching Emergency Tow Off

1. Switch your vehicle on.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal.
3. Apply the electric parking brake. See **Electric Parking Brake** (page 267).

Note: A confirmation message appears in the instrument cluster display and the electric parking brake lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster display.

Note: If your vehicle has an anti-theft alarm, make sure you switch perimeter sensing on when towing. See **Setting the Alarm Security Level** (page 86).

Towing Your Vehicle - Manual Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Note: Put your climate control system in recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. See **Climate Control** (page 131).

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle.

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.

Note: Do not tow your vehicle backward.

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in neutral position.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Towing Your Vehicle - Automatic Transmission

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You must switch your vehicle on when being towed. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle. Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.



WARNING: The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



WARNING: Too much tension in the tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Recovery Towing** (page 377).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example, right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

Note: *Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.*

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Note: *Make sure the transmission is in neutral when towing your vehicle.*

Note: *Do not tow your vehicle backward.*

EMERGENCY TOWING

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in position N.
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Maximum distance is 80 km (50 mi).

Emergency Equipment

STORING A FIRST AID KIT - DIESEL/GASOLINE

You can store a first aid kit in the passenger side front door storage.

STORING A FIRST AID KIT - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

You can store a first aid kit in the passenger side front door storage or in the frunk.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE - DIESEL/GASOLINE

You can store a warning triangle in the driver side front door storage.

STORING A WARNING TRIANGLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

You can store a warning triangle in the driver side front door storage or in the frunk.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS



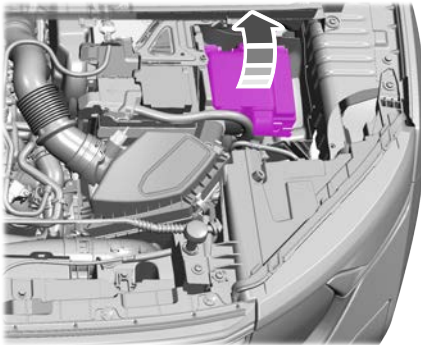
WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.



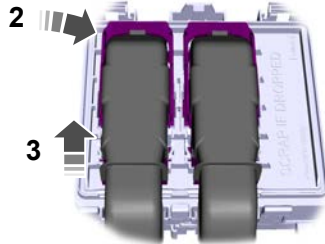
WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

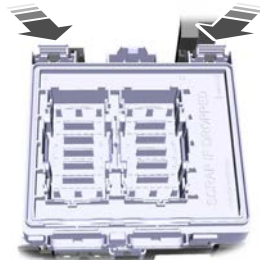
ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



1. Pull the latch toward you and remove the top cover.



2. Pull the connector lever upward.
3. Pull the connector upward to remove it.

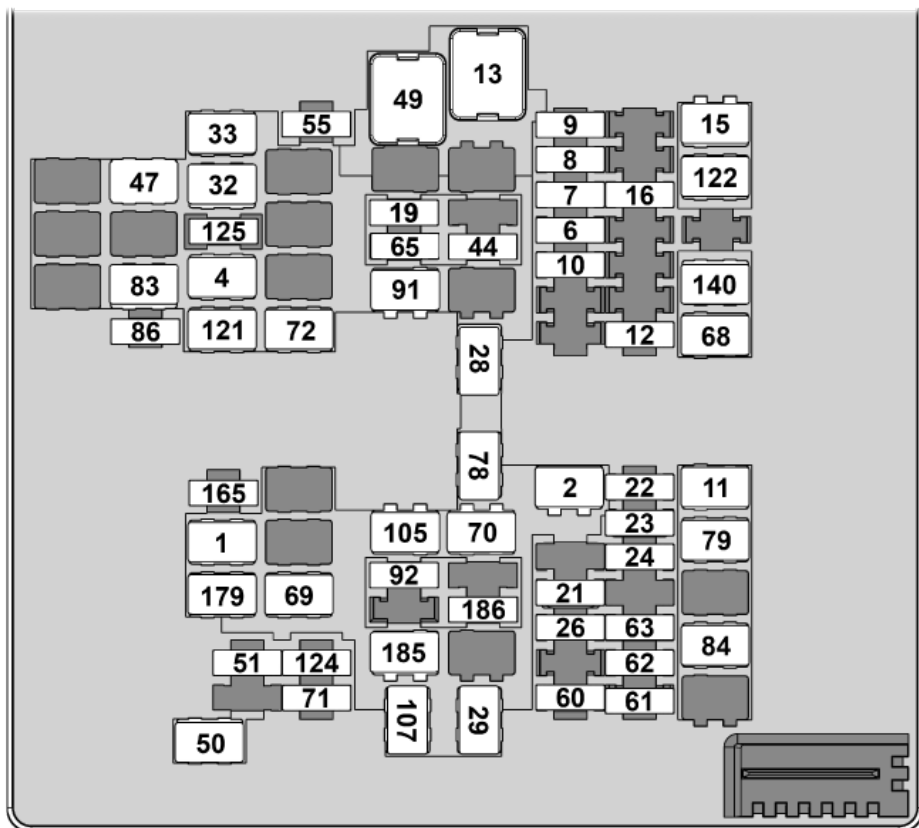


4. Pull both latches toward you and remove the fuse box.

Fuses

5. Turn the fuse box over and open the lid.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX - GASOLINE



Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	40 A	Body control module.
2	30 A	Body control module.
4	20 A	Fuel pump.
6	20 A	Powertrain control module.
7	20 A	Universal heated oxygen sensor. Post-cat heated oxygen sensor. Camshaft timing valve 1. Camshaft timing valve 2. Cannister purge valve. Oil pump. Turbocharger wastegate valve.
8	10 A	Active grille shutter. Air conditioning compressor.
9	15 A	Ignition coil.
10	15 A	Transmission control module.
11	30 A	Starter motor solenoid.
12	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
13	40 A	Blower motor.
15	20 A	Horn.
16	20 A	Washer.
19	10 A	Rear left-hand door unlock.
21	10 A	Headlamp leveling motor
22	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system module
23	10 A	Anti-lock brake system.
24	10 A	Electronic power assist steering. Powertrain control module.
26	10 A	Transmission control module.
28	40 A	Anti-lock brake system valve.
29	60 A	Anti-lock brake system pump.
32	20 A	Power outlet 1.

Fuses

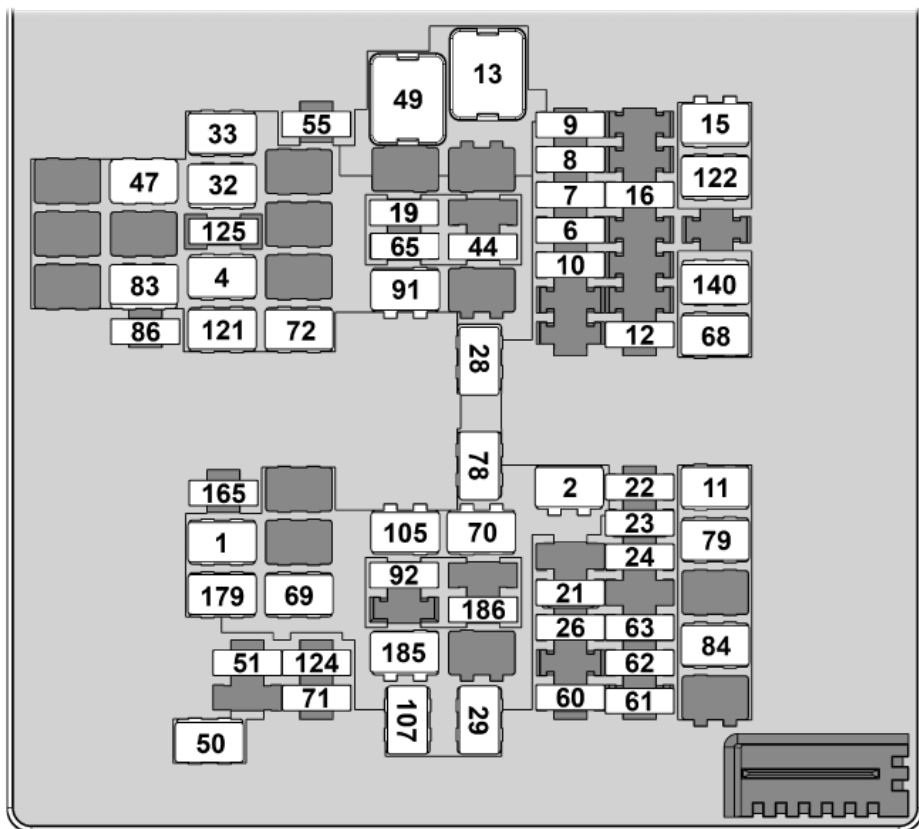
Item	Rating	Protected Component
33	20 A	Power outlet 2.
44	10 A	Brake on-off switch.
47	40 A	Low-speed cooling fan.
49	60 A	High-speed cooling fan.
50	40 A	Rear window heater.
51	10 A	Heated mirror.
55	10 A	Liftgate/Cargo door unlock.
60	5 A	Modified vehicle connection.
61	20 A	Modified vehicle connection.
62	10 A	Modified vehicle connection.
63	10 A	Modified vehicle connection.
65	25 A	Heated seats.
68	20 A	Steering column lock.
69	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
70	25 A	Left-hand rear-window power.
71	20 A	Rear window wiper motor.
72	25 A	Right-hand rear-window power.
78	40 A	Left-hand windscreen heater.
79	40 A	Right-hand windscreen heater.
83	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 1.
84	60 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 2.
86	-	Not used.
91	40 A	Trailer tow module.
92	5 A	Headlamp switch.
105	40 A	Modified vehicle connection.
107	60 A	Trailer tow module.
121	-	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
122	60 A	Transmission control module.
124	5 A	Rain sensor. Auto headlamp sensor.
125	5 A	Power outlet 3 - USB.
140	-	Not used.
165	-	Not used.
179	-	Not used.
185	30 A	Front driver power window.
186	10 A	Diagnostic.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX - DIESEL



Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	40 A	Body control module.
2	30 A	Body control module.
4	20 A	Fuel pump.
6	20 A	Powertrain control module.
7	10 A	Oil pump. Exhaust gas recirculation cooler bypass valve.
8	10 A	Electric heated thermostat.
9	15 A	Particulate matter sensor. Mass air flow and intake air temperature sensor. FG NOX sensor. TP NOX sensor.
10	15 A	Not used.
11	30 A	Starter motor solenoid.
12	10 A	Air conditioning clutch.
13	40 A	Blower motor.
15	20 A	Horn.
16	20 A	Washer.
19	10 A	Rear left-hand door unlock.
21	10 A	Headlamp leveling motor.
22	20 A	Advanced driver assistance system module.
23	10 A	Anti-lock brake system.
24	10 A	Electronic power assist steering. Powertrain control module.
26	10 A	Glow plug dosage module.
28	40 A	Anti-lock brake system valve.
29	60 A	Anti-lock brake system pump.
32	20 A	Power outlet 1.
33	20 A	Power outlet 2.

Fuses

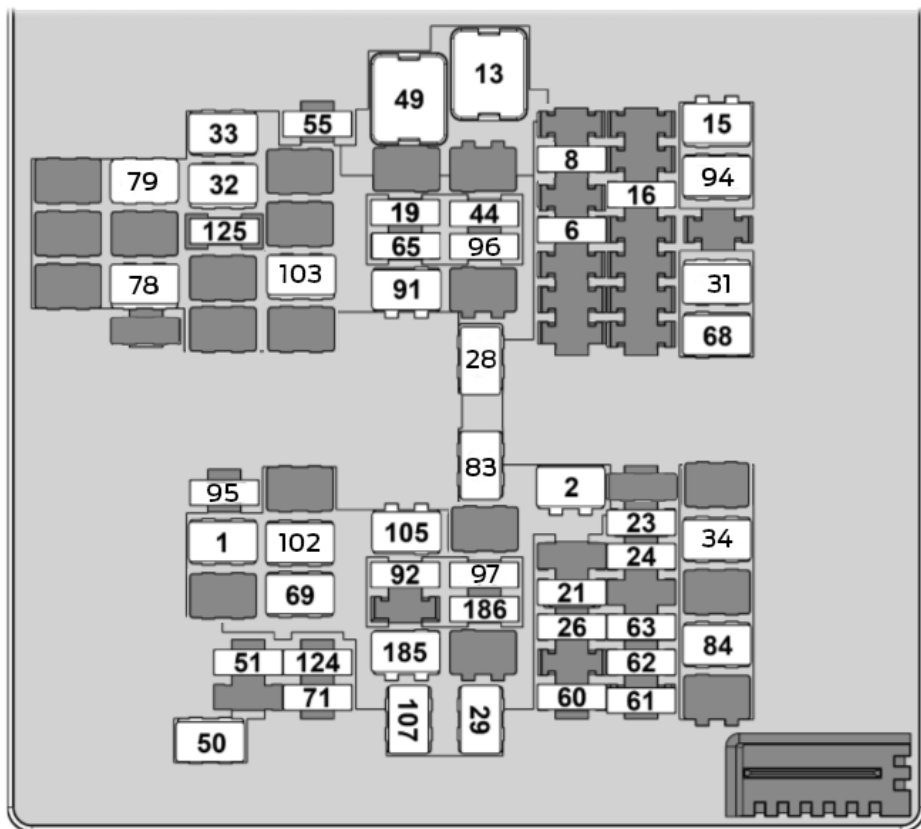
Item	Rating	Protected Component
44	10 A	Brake on-off switch.
47	40 A	Low-speed cooling fan.
49	60 A	High-speed cooling fan.
50	40 A	Rear window heater.
51	10 A	Heated mirror.
55	10 A	Liftgate/Cargo door unlock.
60	5 A	Modified vehicle connection.
61	20 A	Modified vehicle connection.
62	10 A	Modified vehicle connection.
63	10 A	Modified vehicle connection.
65	25 A	Heated seats.
68	20 A	Steering column lock.
69	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
70	25 A	Left-hand rear-window power.
71	20 A	Rear window wiper motor.
72	25 A	Right-hand rear-window power.
78	40 A	Left-hand windscreen heater.
79	40 A	Right-hand windscreen heater.
83	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 1.
84	60 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 2.
86	15 A	UREA pressure line heater.
91	40 A	Trailer tow module.
92	5 A	Headlamp switch.
105	40 A	Modified vehicle connection.
107	60 A	Trailer tow module.
121	30 A	Fuel filter.
122	-	Not used.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
124	5 A	Rain sensor. Auto headlamp sensor.
125	5 A	Power outlet 3 - USB.
140	60 A	Glow plug dosage module.
165	15 A	UREA tank heater.
179	20 A	UREA dosage control unit internal function.
185	30 A	Front driver power window.
186	10 A	Diagnostic.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	40 A	Body control module.
2	30 A	Body control module.
6	20 A	Powertrain control module.
8	10 A	Air conditioning compressor. Auxiliary positive temperature coefficient heater pump.
13	40 A	Blower motor.
15	20 A	Horn.
16	20 A	Washer.
19	10 A	Rear left-hand door unlock.
21	10 A	Headlamp leveling motor.
23	10 A	Electric brake boost module.
24	10 A	Electronic power assist steering. Powertrain control module.
26	10 A	Hybrid powertrain control module. Auxiliary power distribution box.
28	60 A	Electric brake boost module.
29	60 A	Electric brake boost module.
31	60 A	Auxiliary power distribution box.
32	20 A	Power outlet 1.
33	20 A	Power outlet 2.
34	60 A	400W inverter.
44	5 A	AC charging control module.
49	60 A	Cooling fan motor.
50	40 A	Rear window heater.
51	10 A	Heated mirror.
55	10 A	Liftgate/Cargo door unlock.
60	5 A	Modified vehicle connection.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
61	20 A	Modified vehicle connection.
62	10 A	Modified vehicle connection.
63	10 A	Modified vehicle connection.
65	25 A	Heated seats.
68	20 A	Electrical steering column lock.
69	30 A	Windshield wiper motor.
71	20 A	Rear window wiper motor.
78	40 A	Left-hand windscreen heater.
79	40 A	Right-hand windscreen heater.
83	40 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 1.
84	60 A	Positive temperature coefficient heater bank 2.
91	40 A	Trailer tow module.
92	5 A	Headlamp switch.
94	40 A	Parking brake module.
95	5 A	Battery energy control module.
96	5 A	Hybrid powetrain control module.
97	10 A	Battery charger module.
102	25 A	Window motor 1.
103	25 A	Window motor 2.
105	40 A	Modified vehicle connection.
107	60 A	Trailer tow module.
124	5 A	Rain sensor. Auto headlamp sensor.
125	5 A	Power outlet 3 - USB.
185	30 A	Front driver power window.
186	10 A	Diagnostic.

Fuses

BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - LHD

The fuse box is behind the glove compartment.

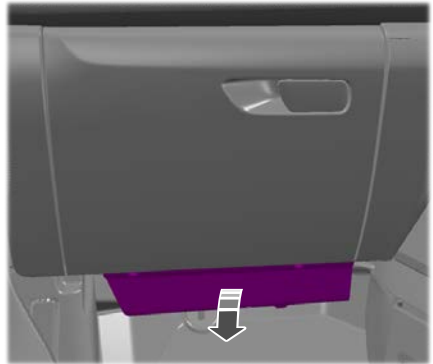


1. Open the glove compartment and empty the contents.

2. Turn the retaining clips and remove them.
3. Press the sides inward and swivel the glove compartment downward.

ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - RHD

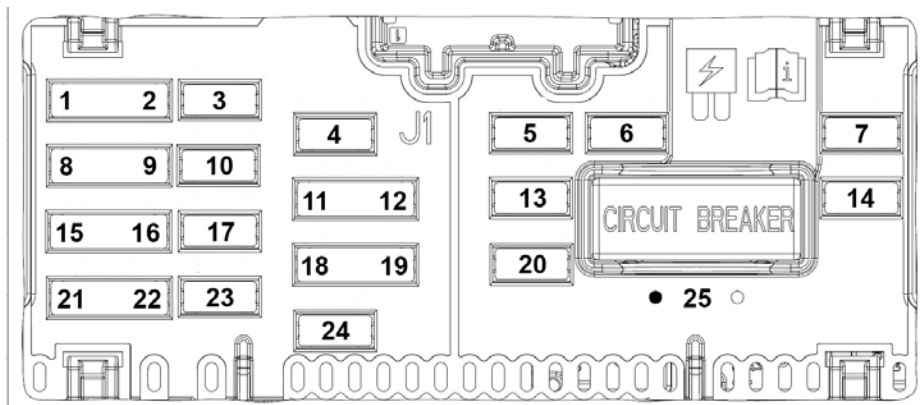
The fuse box is below the glove compartment.



Carefully remove the cover.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - DIESEL/GASOLINE



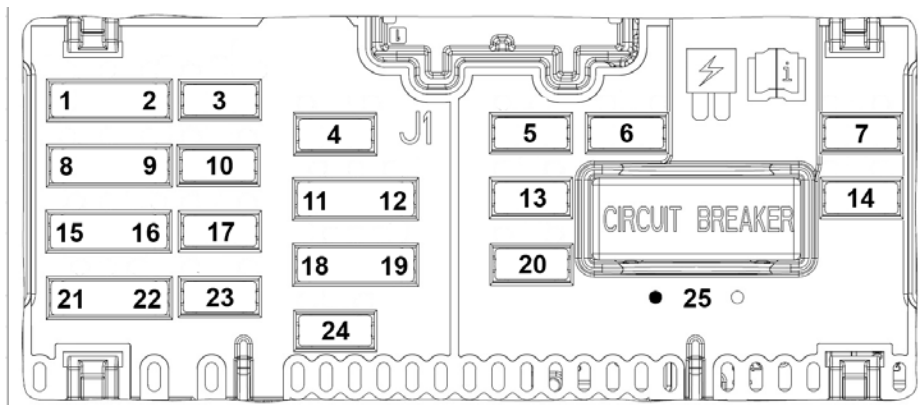
Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	Not used.
3	10 A	Not used.
4	10 A	Panel integrated control. Enhanced central gateway.
5	20 A	Door lock.
6	10 A	Delayed ACC power-Driver door power window switch.
7	30 A	Passenger door control module.
8	5 A	Not used.
9	5 A	Electrochromic mirror. Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
10	10 A	Not used.
11	5 A	Instrument cluster.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
		Steering wheel column control module.
12	5 A	Power window driver switch. Intrusion/inclination sensor.
13	15 A	Door unlock.
14	30 A	Driver door control module.
15	15 A	Steering wheel column control module.
16	15 A	Not used.
17	15 A	Phone/voice control module (Multimedia gateway).
18	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging control module. Driver state monitoring camera module.
19	7.5 A	Battery back-up sounder.
20	10 A	Anti-theft alarm horn.
21	7.5 A	Ignition switch. Remote climate control module. Start/stop switch.
22	7.5 A	Telematics embedded modem.
23	20 A	Radio.
24	20 A	Not used.
25	30 A	Circuit breaker.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
1	5 A	Restraints control module.
2	5 A	Not used.
3	10 A	Not used.
4	10 A	Rotary switch. Navigation display. Enhanced central gateway.
5	20 A	Door lock.
6	10 A	Delayed ACC power-Driver door power window switch. Delayed ACC power-400W inverter.
7	30 A	Passenger door control module.
8	5 A	Not used.
9	5 A	Electrochromic mirror. Passenger airbag deactivation indicator.
10	10 A	Telematics embedded modem.

Fuses

Item	Fuse Rating	Protected Component
11	5 A	Instrument cluster.
12	5 A	Power window driver switch. Intrusion/inclination sensor.
13	15 A	Door unlock.
14	30 A	Driver door control module.
15	15 A	Steering wheel column control module.
16	15 A	Not used.
17	15 A	Phone/voice control module (Multimedia gateway).
18	7.5 A	Wireless accessory charging control module. Driver state monitoring camera module.
19	7.5 A	Battery back-up sounder.
20	10 A	Not used.
21	7.5 A	Ignition switch. Remote climate control module.
22	7.5 A	Instrument cluster. Steering wheel column control module.
23	20 A	Radio.
24	20 A	Not used.
25	30 A	Circuit breaker.

HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

To locate the fuses in the high current fuse box, contact an authorized dealer.

ACCESSING THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

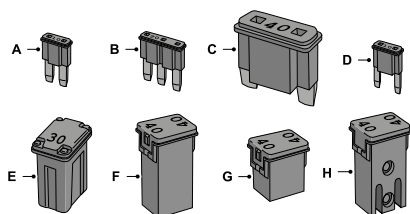
To access the fuses in the high current fuse box, contact an authorized dealer.

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE HIGH CURRENT FUSE BOX

To identify the fuses in the high current fuse box, contact an authorized dealer.

Fuses

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



A	Micro 2.
B	Micro 3.
C	Maxi.
D	Mini.
E	M Case.
F	J Case.
G	J Case Low Profile.
H	Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Have your vehicle serviced regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

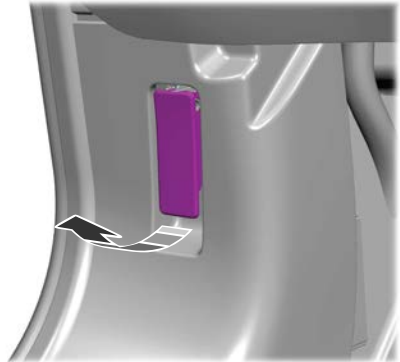
Use only recommended fluids and service parts conforming to specifications.

If you do not use oil and fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Reduced brake performance.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

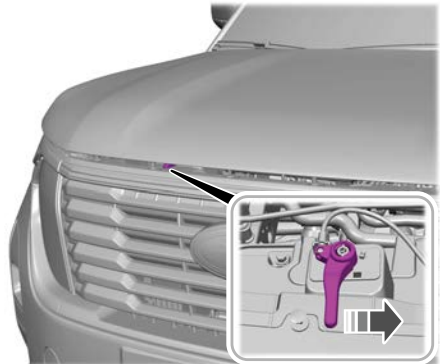
Opening the Hood



1. Pull the hood release lever.

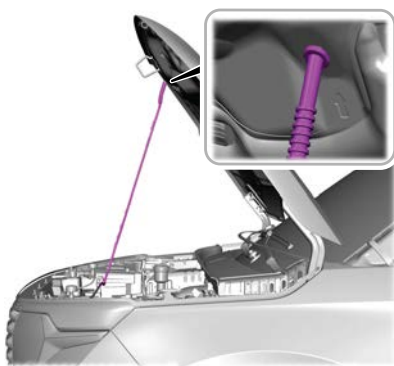
Note: It is located under the instrument panel on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

2. Slightly lift the hood.



3. Move the catch to the right.
4. Open the hood.

Maintenance



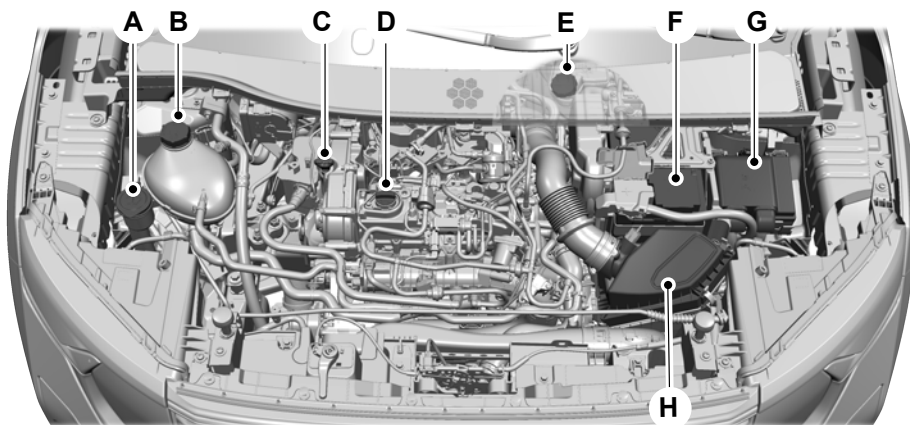
5. Support the hood with the strut.

Closing the Hood

1. Remove the strut from the catch and secure it correctly in the clip.
2. Lower the hood and allow it to drop under its own weight for the last 20–30 cm (8–12 in).

Note: Make sure that the hood is correctly closed.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - GASOLINE, LHD

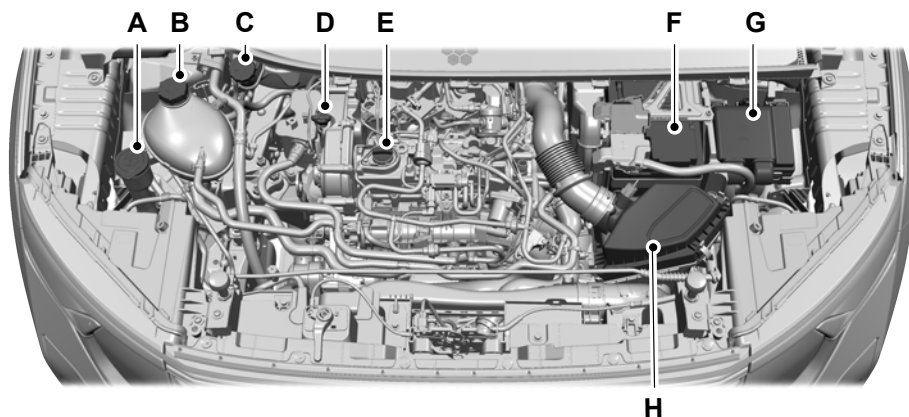


- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 97).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 414).
- C Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 411).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 411).
- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 261).

Maintenance

- F 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 423).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 386).
- H Air filter assembly.

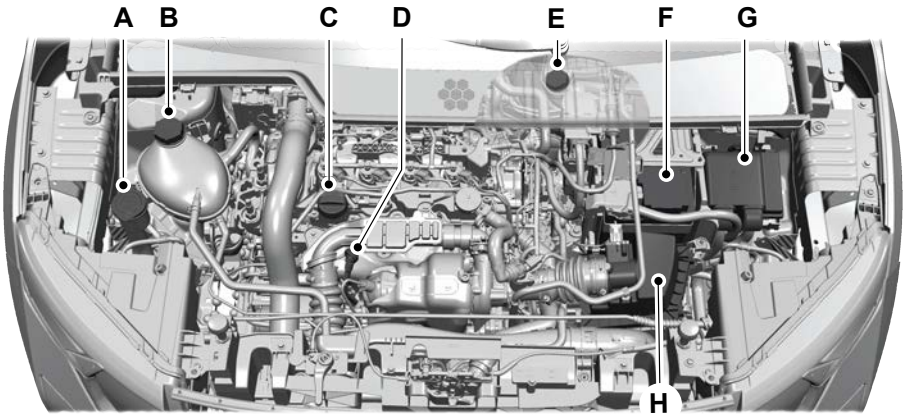
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - GASOLINE, RHD



- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 97).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 414).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 261).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 411).
- E Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 411).
- F 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 423).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 386).
- H Air filter assembly.

Maintenance

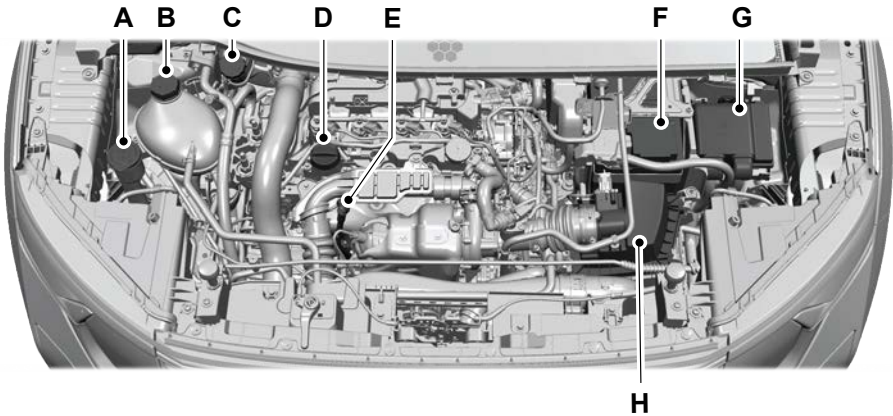
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - DIESEL, LHD



- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 97).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 414).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 411).
- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 411).
- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 261).
- F 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 423).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 386).
- H Air filter assembly.

Maintenance

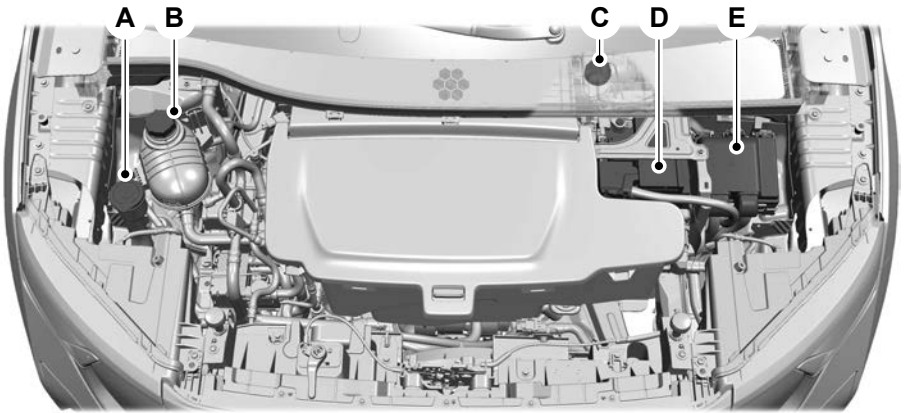
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - DIESEL, RHD



- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 97).
- B Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 414).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 261).
- D Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 411).
- E Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 411).
- F 12V Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 423).
- G Engine compartment fuse box. See **Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 386).
- H Air filter assembly.

Maintenance

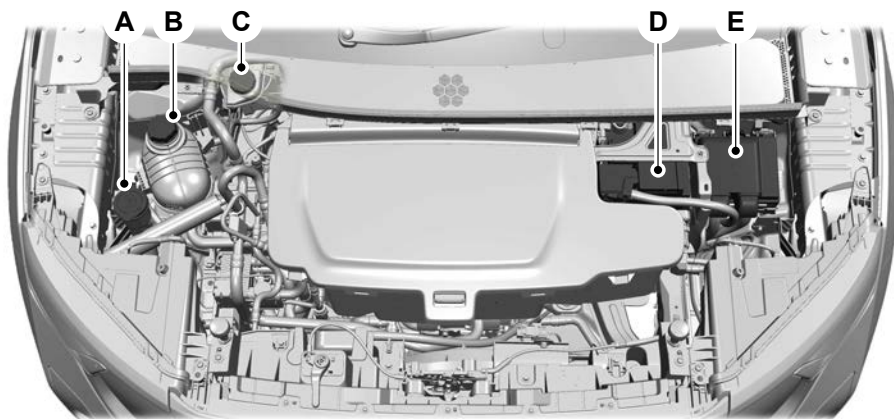
UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, LHD



- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 97).
- B Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 414).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 261).
- D 12V battery. See **Charging the 12V Battery** (page 425).
- E Under hood fuse box. See **Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 395).

Maintenance

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE, RHD

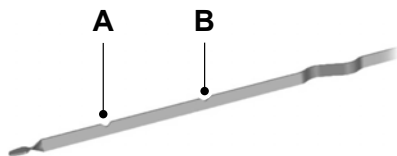


- A Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 97).
- B Coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant Level** (page 414).
- C Brake fluid reservoir. See **Checking the Brake Fluid** (page 261).
- D 12V battery. See **Charging the 12V Battery** (page 425).
- E Under hood fuse box. See **Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 395).

Maintenance

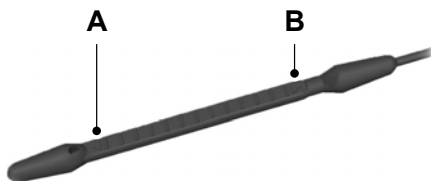
ENGINE OIL

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - GASOLINE



- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW - DIESEL



- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.
4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: Read both sides of the dipstick and use the lowest oil level as the correct reading.

Note: If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km (3,000 mi).

Note: Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.

Note: If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

ADDING ENGINE OIL



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Maintenance

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Engine Oil Capacity and Specification** (page 412). See **Engine Oil Capacity and Specification** (page 413).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: *Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.*

Note: *Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.*

INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Under certain conditions the vehicle's intelligent oil life monitor may determine that your oil requires replacement prior to your general service. Should this occur it is recommended you replace your oil within two weeks or 800 km (500 mi) of being alerted.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - GASOLINE

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	4.97 L (1.09 gal)

Note: *The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 1.45 L (0.32 gal).*

Your authorized dealer will be able to advise you whether only an engine oil and filter change is recommended or whether you should complete your general service inclusive of oil and oil filter.

Checking the Current State of Oil Life

You can check the current state of oil life in percentage.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Oil life**.

RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Only reset the oil life monitoring system after changing the engine oil and oil filter.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Oil Life**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

Maintenance

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20	WSS-M2C954-A1

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C954-A1, you can top-up with SAE 0W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C6.

Note: Do not use more than 0.5 L (0.1 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - DIESEL

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.6 L (1.5 gal)

Note: The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum is 2.2 L (0.5 gal).

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-20	WSS-M2C952-A1

Engine Oil Top-Up

If you are unable to find engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C952-A1, you can top-up with a SAE 0W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C5.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L (0.2 gal) of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

ENGINE COOLING FAN - GASOLINE



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off.

Maintenance

ENGINE COOLING FAN - DIESEL



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in all ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature. See **What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter** (page 202).

COOLANT - DIESEL/GASOLINE

COOLANT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Coolant** (page 417). See **Cooling System Capacity and**

Specification (page 417). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionised or distilled water. See **Coolant** (page 417). See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 417). Using water that has not been deionised may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

Note: Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Coolant** (page 417). See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 417).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted engine coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

Maintenance

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 380).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).

Maintenance

2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill the coolant to the MAX mark on the coolant reservoir.

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

Note: *Yellow coolant may become darker over time. This is normal.*



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Engine coolant over temperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Checking the Coolant Level (page 414).
Stop Safely Now	

Maintenance

COOLANT - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the electric motor is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure. Steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when you loosen the cap slightly.

When the electric motor is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark. This is normal.

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C (-29°F) and -37°C (-35°F). Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

ADDING COOLANT



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.



WARNING: Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the electric motor cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

Maintenance

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the electric motor cooling system. See **Coolant** (page 420). See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 417). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the electric motor or cooling system components and may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: *If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionized or distilled water. See **Coolant** (page 420). See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 417). Using water that has not been deionized may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.*

Note: *Coolants marketed for all makes and models may not be approved to our specifications and may cause damage to the cooling system. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification. See **Coolant** (page 420). See **Cooling System Capacity and Specification** (page 417).
3. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.
4. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.

5. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, add enough prediluted coolant to bring the coolant level to the correct level.

If you have to add more than 1 L (1.1 qt) of coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating your vehicle with a low level of coolant can result in overheating and possible electric motor damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Water alone, without coolant, can cause damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Alcohol and other liquids can cause damage from overheating or freezing.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

CHANGING THE COOLANT

For coolant change, see your authorized dealer.

Changing the coolant is necessary at specific mileage intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Maintenance

MANAGING THE COOLANT TEMPERATURE



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the electric motor is overheating, the vehicle could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone a message appears in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced electric motor power in order to manage the coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and outside temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive. See **Fail-Safe Cooling** (page 380).

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the electric motor from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the temperature warning or stop safely messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Leave the vehicle powered on until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
4. Power the vehicle off and wait for it to cool.
5. Check the coolant level.
6. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
7. If the coolant level is normal, restart the vehicle and continue.

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill the coolant to the MAX mark on the coolant reservoir.

Maintenance

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze PU7J-M97B57-EA/EB/FA	WSS-M97B57-A2

Note: Yellow coolant may become darker over time. This is normal.

COOLANT – WARNING LAMPS



If the electric motor or high voltage battery begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone.

COOLANT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description and Action
Stop Safely Now	Displays when the coolant or high voltage battery temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, power the vehicle off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Managing the Coolant Temperature (page 420).
Limited performance due to hot battery	Displays if your vehicle has limited performance due to a hot high voltage battery. Drive with caution. Keep your vehicle connected to a charging system when not in use to maintain battery temperature. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Severely limited performance due to hot battery	

Maintenance

12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**



WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.



WARNING: For vehicles equipped with a 12V battery vent tube, always properly reconnect the vent tube to the battery after disconnecting. Failure to follow this instruction could allow harmful gasses to enter the vehicle cabin, which could cause personal injury or death.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.

Maintenance

- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - DIESEL/GASOLINE

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 404).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

Note: *There may be additional components that need to be removed or disconnected before you can safely remove the battery from your vehicle. For specific guidance on which components may need to be addressed, it is best to contact your dealer for detailed information.*

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.

Maintenance

2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This allows the system to store diagnostic and adaptive tables.*

Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.
5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.

Note: *Before removing batteries with a vent tube, disconnect and secure the tube.*

6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 111).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that you correctly install the battery cable terminals, battery terminal covers, battery vent tube, battery securing clamp and battery cover.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

If the 12 volt battery needs servicing, see your authorized dealer.

RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR - DIESEL/GASOLINE

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Maintenance

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY - TURKEY



CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12-volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12-volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12-volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12-volt battery depletion can still occur if the high voltage battery state of charge is low. See **Preserving Your High Voltage Battery** (page 215).

Always take care not to deep discharge the 12-volt battery as it may cause premature wear.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING-DIESEL/GASOLINE

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electrical system malfunction Service soon Steering and brake assist limited	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Electrical system malfunction Service now Steering and brake assist limited	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.
12V battery low Charge by driving Steering and brake assist limited	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See Jump Starting Precautions (page 374). See Jump Starting Precautions (page 373). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

Maintenance

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



If it illuminates when the green ready to drive indicator is activated, this indicates your vehicle requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

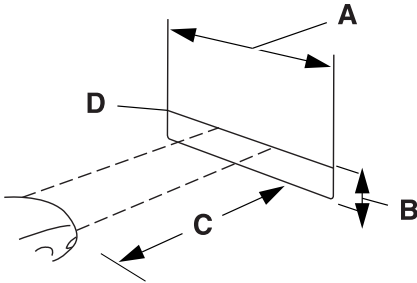
Message	Action
12V battery malfunction Service soon	Your vehicle has a 12 volt battery problem. We recommend having the battery system checked by an authorized EV dealer.
Electric range reduced due to position/hazard lamps on while vehicle off	The electric vehicle range is reduced due to the park and/or hazard lamps on while your vehicle was off.
Electrical system drain Service required	Your vehicle has an electrical drain within the vehicle. Please check for any after-market devices that could be draining the battery. If none are found, please have your vehicle serviced by an authorized EV dealer.

Maintenance

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim

Headlamp Aim Target



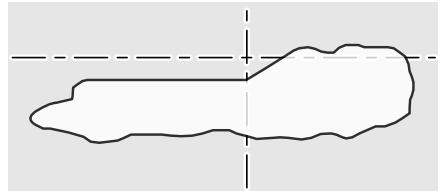
- A 8 ft (2.4 m).
- B Center height of lamp to ground.
- C 25 ft (7.6 m).
- D Horizontal reference line.

Vertical Aim Adjustment

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface approximately 7.6 m (25 ft) from a vertical wall or screen.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Measure the height from the center of the headlamp to the ground.

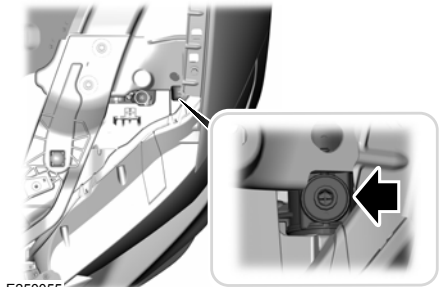
Note: There may be an identifying mark on the lens to help you locate the center of the headlamp bulb.

4. Mark a horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen that is a minimum of 2.4 m (8 ft) long.
5. Switch the low beam headlamps on and open the hood.



E209825

6. There is a distinct change from light to dark in the left-hand portion of the headlamp beam pattern. Position the top edge of this cut-off 7.5 cm (3 in) below the horizontal reference line.



E250055

7. To adjust the vertical aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

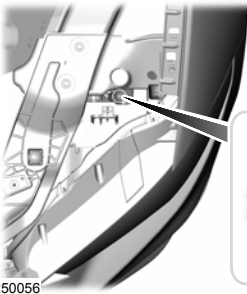
Note: To see a clearer light pattern while adjusting one headlamp, block the light from the other headlamp.

8. Close the hood and switch the low beam headlamps off.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim should not be required although it is adjustable.

Maintenance



E250056



- To adjust the horizontal aim, use a suitable tool to rotate the adjuster clockwise or counterclockwise.

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Headlamp high beam. ¹	H15	55/15
Headlamp high beam. ²	H1	55/15
Headlamp low beam.	H7	55/15
Daytime running lamps. ¹	H15	55/15
Daytime running lamps. ²	LED.	-
Front turn signal lamp. ¹	PY21W	21
Front turn signal lamp. ²	LED.	-
Rear lamp and stoplamp.	LED.	-
Rear lamp and rear fog lamp.	P21/4W	21/4
Rear turn signal lamp. ¹	PY21W	21
Reversing lamp.	P21W	21
High mounted stoplamp.	LED.	-
License plate lamp. ³	W5W	5

Maintenance

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
C2C light bar.	LED.	-
Side turn lamp.	WY5W	5

¹ Low series.

² High series.

³ License plate lamp is also available as LED lamp.

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

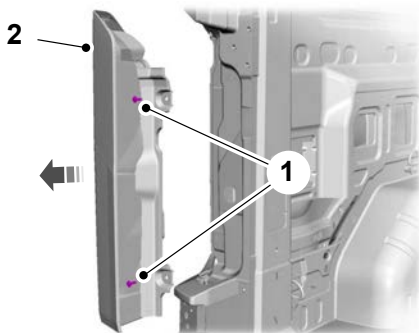
Note: If the side turn lamps fail have your vehicle checked.

Maintenance

REMOVING A REAR LAMP ASSEMBLY



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



E175758

1. Remove the screws.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING AN ENTRY LAMP BULB



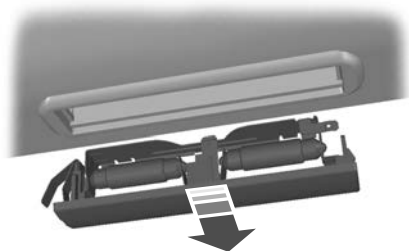
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



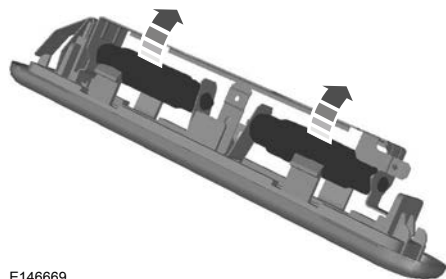
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 429).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E154369



E146669

1. Remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulbs.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A REVERSING LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



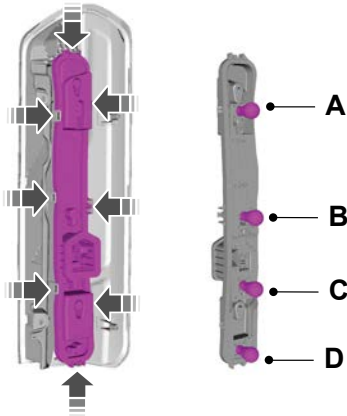
WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Maintenance

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 429).

You must remove the rear lamp assembly prior to replacing any bulb. See **Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly** (page 431).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



- A Tail lamp and stoplamp.
- B Rear turn signal lamp.
- C Reversing lamp.
- D Rear fog lamp.

1. Unclip the bulb holder.
2. Press the bulb in and turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A LICENSE PLATE LAMP BULB



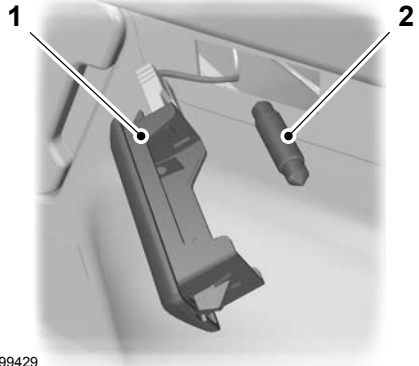
WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.



WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Exterior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 429).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.



E99429

1. Remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Maintenance

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Front interior lamp.	W6W	6
Front interior lamp. ¹	Festoon	6
Luggage compartment lamp.	211 Festoon	10
Map reading lamp.	W6W	6
Side door entrance lamp.	211 Festoon	10

¹ Vehicles with anti-theft alarm.

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Maintenance

CHANGING A FRONT INTERIOR LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

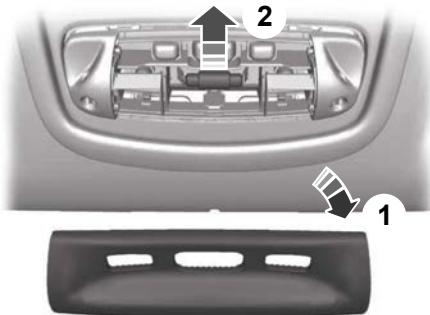


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Interior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 433).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Vehicles With Interior Sensors



E154370

1. Carefully remove the lens.
2. Remove the bulb.
3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

CHANGING A MAP READING LAMP BULB



WARNING: Switch the lamps and the ignition off. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

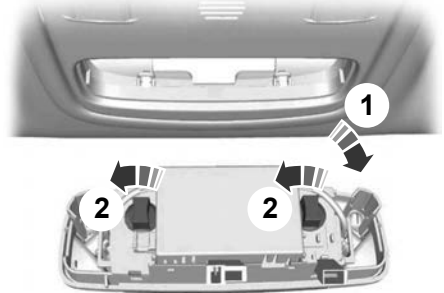


WARNING: Make sure the bulbs have cooled down before removing them. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.

Use the correct specification bulb. See **Interior Bulb Specification Chart** (page 433).

Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

Vehicles With Interior Sensors



E72786

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Maintenance

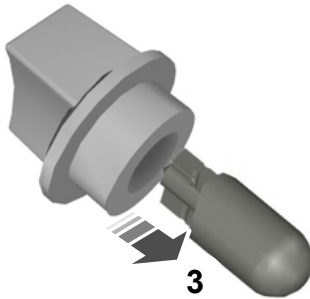
FUEL FILTER SERVICE INDICATOR CHECK - DIESEL

Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp



If the warning lamp illuminates when the engine is running this indicates there is excess water in the fuel filter.

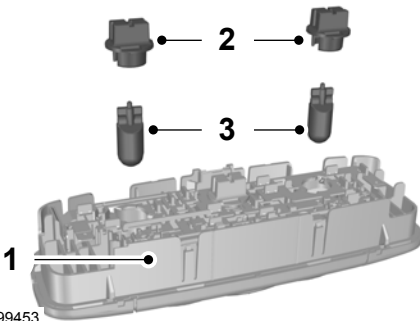
Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



E73939

3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Vehicles Without Interior Sensors



E99453

1. Use a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, to carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Vehicle Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - GASOLINE

Engine	1.0L EcoBoost™
Bore.	71.9 mm (2.8 in)
Stroke.	82 mm (3.2 in)
Capacity.	999 cm ³ (61 in ³)
Compression ratio.	10.5:1
Firing order.	1-2-3

Vehicle Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - DIESEL

Engine	1.5L EcoBlue™
Bore.	75 mm (3.0 in)
Stroke.	84.8 mm (3.3 in)
Capacity.	1,499 cm ³ (91 in ³)
Compression ratio.	16.4:1
Firing order.	1-3-4-2

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - TOURNEO

Dimension Description	Dimension
Overall length.	4,337 mm (170.7 in)
Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2,076 mm (81.7 in)
Overall width including exterior mirrors folded.	1,876 mm (73.9 in)
Overall height - EC curb weight (excluding antenna rod).	1,817–1,840 (71.5–72.4)
Wheelbase.	2,692 mm (106.0 in)
Front track.	1,556 mm (61.3 in)
Rear track.	1,555 mm (61.2 in)

Vehicle Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS - TRANSIT

Dimension Description	Dimension
Overall length.	4,337 mm (170.7 in)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors.	2,076 mm (81.7 in)
Overall width including the exterior mirrors folded.	1,876 mm (73.9 in)
Overall height - EC curb weight (excluding antenna rod).	1,827–1,852 (71.9–72.9)
Wheelbase.	2,692 mm (106.0 in)
Front track.	1,556 mm (61.3 in)
Rear track.	1,555 mm (61.2 in)

Vehicle Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - GASOLINE

**WARNING:** The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant

under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R-1234yf.

Variant	Global Warming Potential	CO ₂ Equivalent
All.	0.501 ¹	0.00024 t

¹ GWP 4(GB)

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.475 kg (1.05 lb)	120 ± 10 cm ³ (4.1 ± 0.3 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-12 FU7J-M2C300-AA	WSS-M2C300-A2

Vehicle Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - DIESEL



WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant

under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R-1234yf.

Variant	Global Warming Potential	CO ₂ Equivalent
All.	0.501 ¹	0.00026 t

¹ GWP 4(GB)

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.52 kg (18.3 oz)	120 –0/+15 cm ³ (4.1 -0.0/+0.5 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-12 FU7J-M2C300-AA	WSS-M2C300-A2

Vehicle Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

**WARNING:** The air conditioning

refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Contains fluorinated greenhouse gas R-1234yf.

Variant	Global Warming Potential	CO ₂ Equivalent
All.	0.501 ¹	0.00026 t

¹ GWP 4(GB)

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant	Refrigerant Oil
All.	0.52 kg (1.146 lb)	160 –0/+15 cm ³ (5.4 –0.0/+0.5 fl oz)

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant – R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
A/C Compressor Oil DE-BEV DU7J-M2C31-BA	WSS-M2C31-B2

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS - DIESEL/GASOLINE

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

Immediately remove additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may damage your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time.

Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

Note: *If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Note: *Do not use chemicals or corrosive products, as they can compromise surfaces and damage critical systems of your vehicle.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

Vehicle Care

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels. For additional information and assistance, contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to hot wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.*

If you intend to park your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels, drive it for few minutes before parking. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean hot wheel rims, wheel covers and wheel ornaments.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims, wheel covers, and wheel ornaments.*

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh acidic cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Failure to properly clean the stainless steel lug nuts may result in a white, hazy finish, pitting, or an orange/brown rust appearance. Such damage is not covered by your vehicle warranty.*

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT - DIESEL/ GASOLINE

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below the windshield.

Note: *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

Note: *Follow the manufacturer's instructions for using engine shampoo and degreaser.*

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a minimum of 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle 30 cm (12 in) and at a 90° angle to your vehicle.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 6,895 kPa (1,000 psi).
- Do not use water hotter than 23°C (73°F).

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Vehicle Care

Note: Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Suspension and steering components may require regular cleaning with a power washer or a thorough rinse with a strong stream of water if the vehicle is operated in dusty or muddy environments. Leaf springs or other suspension components may emit squeaking or popping noises while operating the vehicle if particles, such as dirt, rocks, or other debris, are present in the components.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Note: Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill onto interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Your warranty may not cover these damages.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Vehicle Care

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

Vehicle Care

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING STORAGE COMPARTMENTS

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE - DIESEL/ GASOLINE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage could lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which could cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after washing your vehicle or cleaning the wheels, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, read the following maintenance recommendations to make sure your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

We engineer and test all vehicles and their components for reliable, regular driving. Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve vehicle components.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- Protect from sunlight, if possible.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and damage.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear-wheel housing and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Re-wax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.

- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

Cooling system

- Protect against freezing temperatures.
- When removing your vehicle from storage, check coolant fluid level. Confirm that there are no cooling system leaks and that fluid is at the recommended level.

Battery Systems

We recommend the following actions for your vehicle:

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend disconnecting the 12v battery which will reduce system loads on the HV battery.

Note: *Make sure the vehicle has been switched off and doors closed for at least five minutes before disconnecting the 12 volt battery.*

12 Volt Battery

- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Brakes

- Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after washing your vehicle or cleaning the wheels, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Storing Your Vehicle

Tires

- Maintain recommended air pressure.

Miscellaneous

- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m (25 ft) every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE - DIESEL/ GASOLINE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.

- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Drive your vehicle 4.5 m (15 ft) back and forth to remove rust build-up.
- Check coolant levels to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you removed the 12 volt battery, clean the 12 volt battery cable ends and check for damage.

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

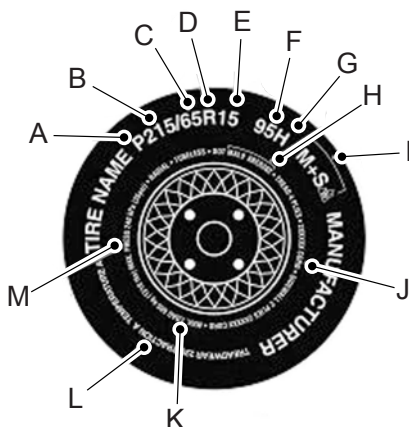
Wheel and Tire Information

LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

The tire label is on the driver side B-pillar or the edge of the driver door. It contains information on the recommended front and rear tire inflation pressures.

INFORMATION ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Information on P Type Tires



P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)

A. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that may be used for service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks. **Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either the European Tire and Rim Technical Organization or the Japan Tire Manufacturing Association.

B. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width.

D. **R:** Indicates a radial type tire.

E. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

F. **95:** Indicates the tire's load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your owner's manual. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

G. **H:** Indicates the tire's speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 130 km/h (81 mph) to 300 km/h (186 mph). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Wheel and Tire Information

Letter rating	Speed rating
M	130 km/h (81 mph)
N	140 km/h (87 mph)
Q	160 km/h (99 mph)
R	170 km/h (106 mph)
S	180 km/h (112 mph)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
U	200 km/h (124 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.

H. Tire Identification Number (TIN): A code which identifies manufacturing location and other information about the tire. It may include the letters "DOT" and be referred to as a DOT code. The last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The letters and numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

I. M+S or M/S: Mud and Snow, or

AT: All Terrain, or

AS: All Season.

J. Tire Ply Composition and Material

Used: Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

K. Maximum Load: Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. See the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position), for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

L. Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades:

***Treadwear** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

***Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

***Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

M. Maximum Inflation Pressure:

Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the vehicle manufacturer's

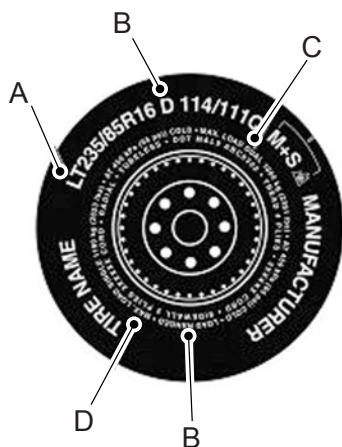
Wheel and Tire Information

recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position). The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load or radial tubeless.

Additional Information Contained on the Tire Sidewall for LT Type Tires

Note: *Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*



LT type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below.

A. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for service on light trucks.

B. Load Range and Load Inflation

Limits: Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

C. **Maximum Load Dual lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual, defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

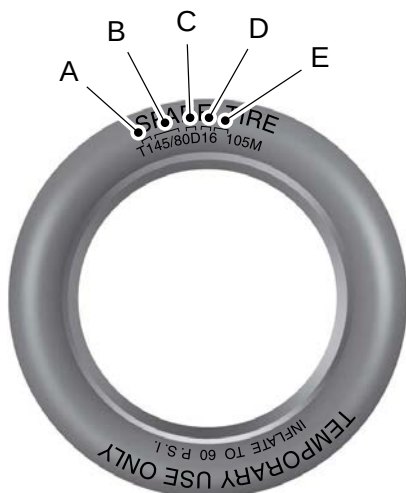
D. **Maximum Load Single lb (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single, defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

Information on T Type Tires

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: *The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.*

Wheel and Tire Information



T type tires have some additional information beyond those of P type tires; these differences are described below:

A. T: Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association, that is intended for temporary service on cars, sport utility vehicles, minivans and light trucks.

B. 145: Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

C. 80: Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire's ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

D. D: Indicates a diagonal type tire.

R: Indicates a radial type tire.

E. 16: Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

GLOSSARY OF TIRE TERMINOLOGY

***Tire label:** A label showing the original equipment tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.

***Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.

***Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.

***Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at set pressure. For example: For P-metric tires 2.4 bar (35 psi) and for Metric tires 2.5 bar (36 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 2.9 bar (42 psi). Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

***kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.

***PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.

***Cold tire pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1.6 km (1 mi).

Wheel and Tire Information

***Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Tire Label (affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch post, next to the driver's seating position).

***B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.

***Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.

***Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.

***Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.

***Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, as those originally provided for your vehicle. The required tire and wheel sizes, along with the minimum required Load and Speed Index, can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: To reduce the risk of serious injury, when mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.



WARNING: For a mounting pressure more than 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.



WARNING: Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.



WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.



WARNING: When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 1.38 bar (20 psi) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

- Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.
- Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.
- Stand at a minimum of 3.66 m (12 ft) away from the wheel and tire assembly.
- Use both eye and ear protection.

Important: Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

Wheel and Tire Information

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair if the worn tires still have usable depth.

To avoid potential All-Wheel Drive (AWD) malfunction or (AWD) system damage, it is recommended to replace all four tires rather than mixing significantly worn tires with new tires.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended may affect the operation of your tire pressure monitoring system.

If the tire pressure monitoring system indicator is flashing, your system is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your tire pressure monitoring system, or some component of the system may be damaged.

Age



WARNING: Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

USING SUMMER TIRES

The original equipment tires on your vehicle are designed to optimize its performance in dry or wet summer road conditions. They are not designed for winter use.

USING WINTER TIRES



We recommend that you use winter or all-season tires carrying this symbol when the temperature is 7°C (45°F) or lower, or in snow and ice conditions.

Inflate the winter tires to the same tire pressures as those listed in the tire pressures table. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 458).

USING SNOW CHAINS - DIESEL/GASOLINE



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.

Wheel and Tire Information



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 195/65R15.
 - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).
- 205/65R16.
 - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).
- 215/55R17.
 - Do not use snow chains greater than 7 mm (0.3 in).

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Note: Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 458).

Note: The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.



WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

- 205/65R16.
 - Do not use snow chains greater than 10 mm (0.4 in).
- 215/55R17.
 - Do not use snow chains greater than 7 mm (0.3 in).

Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Note: Maintain correct tire pressures. See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 460).

Note: The anti-lock brake system continues to correctly operate.

USING SNOW CHAINS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph). Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 458).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - DIESEL/ GASOLINE



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

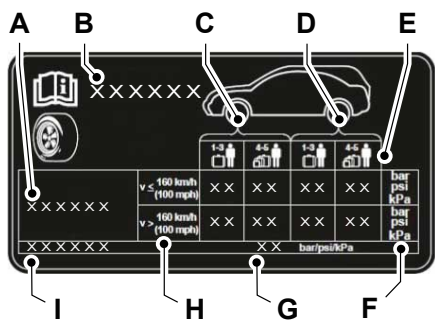
The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: *You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.*

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.

Tire Care



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
195/65R15	2.3 (33)	1.9 (28)	2.3 (33)	2.8 (41)
205/65R16	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)
215/55R17	2.4 (35)	2.1 (30)	2.4 (35)	2.6 (38)

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

Tire Size	bar (psi)
T125/70R16	4.2 (61)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

Tire Care

TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

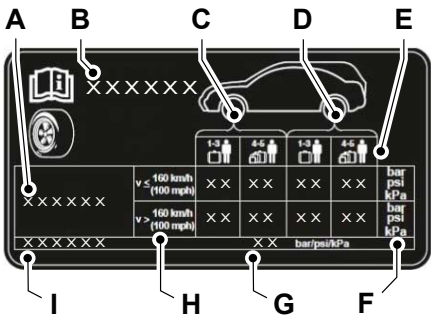
**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.

Note: You may need to remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel carrier to check the tire pressure.

A dissimilar spare wheel and tire is for temporary use only.



E254054

- A Tire size.
- B Vehicle model.
- C Front tire pressure.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Measure unit.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Intended constant vehicle speed.
- I Spare wheel tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)	bar (psi)
205/65R16	2.4 (35)	2.3 (33)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)
215/55R17	2.4 (35)	2.3 (33)	2.4 (35)	2.8 (41)

Tire Care

Temporary Spare Wheel (If Equipped)

Tire Size	bar (psi)
T125/70R16	4.2 (61)

Do not exceed the maximum speed stated on the label attached to the temporary spare wheel.

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If you suspect internal damage to the tire, have the tire dismantled and inspected.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall.



WARNING: Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed.

Examine the tires regularly for uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km (3,000 mi) and 10,000 km (6,000 mi).

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval helps your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

Note: If your tires show any uneven wear have the alignment checked by an authorized dealer before rotating tires.

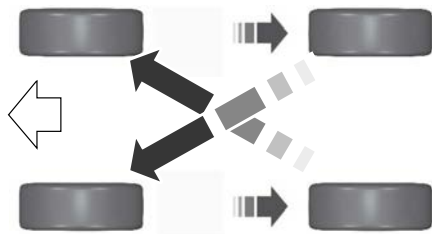
Note: If you have a dissimilar spare wheel and tire assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

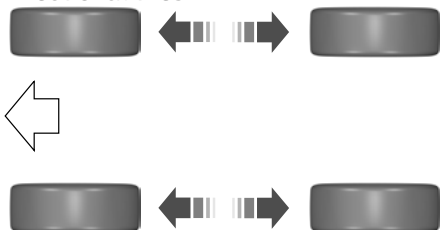
Tire Care

Note: Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.

Non-directional tires



Directional tires



E70415

Note: Directional tires have an arrow on the sidewall to indicate the correct direction of wheel rotation. Do not switch directional tires to the other side of your vehicle.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

WHAT IS THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The kit consists of an air compressor to re-inflate the tire and a canister of sealing compound that effectively seals most punctures. This kit provides a temporary tire repair allowing you to drive your vehicle up to 200 km (120 mi) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) to reach a tire service location.

Note: The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only. See an authorized dealer for replacement sealant canisters.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Depending on the type and extent of tire damage, some tires can only be partially sealed or not sealed at all. Loss of tire pressure can affect vehicle handling, leading to loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: Do not use the kit on a previously damaged tire, for example when it has been driven under inflated. This could cause loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to repair punctures larger than 6 mm (0.24 in) or damage to the tire's sidewall.

Only punctures located within the tire tread can be sealed with the kit.

Only use the kit supplied with your vehicle.

Only use the kit when the ambient temperature is between -40°C (-39.9°F) and 70°C (157.9°F).

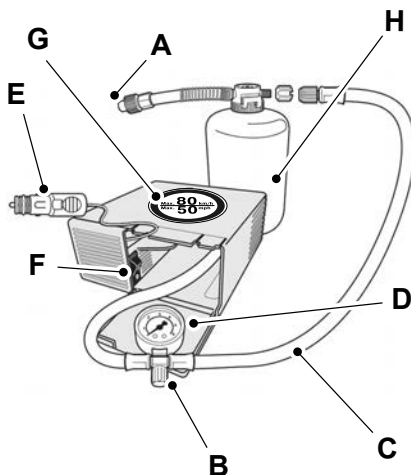
The temporary mobility kit contains enough sealant compound in the canister for one tire repair only.

After using the sealant, an authorized dealer needs to replace the tire pressure monitoring system sensor and valve stem on the wheel.

LOCATING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT

The compressor and the bottle are behind the driver seat or under the front seats.

TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT COMPONENTS



E146784

- A Protective cap
- B Pressure relief valve
- C Hose
- D Pressure gauge

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

- E Power plug with cable
- F Compressor switch
- G Label
- H Sealant bottle

Note: Make sure you regularly check the expiry date on the sealant bottle.

USING THE TIRE SEALANT AND INFLATOR KIT



WARNING: The sealant contains natural rubber latex. Avoid contact with skin and clothing. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and consult a physician.



WARNING: Do not leave the kit unattended when it is in use. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Check the sidewall of the tire prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tire. This could cause personal injury.



WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

Note: The recommended tire pressures are on the tire label or safety certification label, located on the B-pillar, inside the driver's door.

1. Check for a punctured tire.

Note: Do not remove objects, for example nails or screws from a punctured tire.

2. Open the lid of the tire sealant and inflator kit.

3. Peel off the label G showing the maximum permissible speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) from the casing and attach it to the instrument panel in the driver's field of view. Make sure the label does not obscure anything important.
4. Take the hose C and the power plug with cable E out of the temporary mobility kit.
5. Screw the hose C onto the sealant bottle.
6. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tire.
7. Remove the protective cap A from the sealant bottle hose and screw the hose firmly onto the valve of the damaged tire.
8. Make sure that the compressor switch F is in position 0.
9. Insert the power plug E into the auxiliary power point. See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 166).
10. Start the engine.



WARNING: Do not stand directly beside the tire while the compressor is operating. This could cause personal injury if the tire bursts.

11. Move the compressor switch F to position 1.
12. After a minimum of two minutes move the compressor switch F to position 0 and unscrew the hose C from the sealant bottle. Unscrew the sealant bottle hose from the tire valve.
13. Screw the hose C onto the tire valve and move the compressor switch F to position 1.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: Watch the sidewall of the tire when inflating. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appears, switch the compressor off and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue driving with this tire. This could cause loss of vehicle control.



WARNING: If the tire does not inflate to the recommended tire pressure within 15 minutes, stop and call roadside assistance.

14. Inflate the tire to the recommended tire pressure shown on the tire label on the B pillar. Do not operate the compressor for more than 15 minutes continuously. Switch the compressor and the ignition off and check the current tire pressure with the pressure gauge.

Note: *Note: If the recommended tire pressure is not reached within 15 minutes, you may disconnect the compressor, slowly roll the vehicle forward by one car length to distribute the sealant within the tire, then restart the inflation process. If the recommended tire pressure is still not reached, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Stop and call roadside assistance.*

15. Remove the power plug E from the auxiliary power point.
16. Make sure the tire sealant and inflator kit, the bottle lid and the orange cap are stored safely, but still easily accessible in your vehicle. The tire sealant and inflator kit will be required again when you check the tire pressure.
17. Immediately drive approximately six miles (10 kilometers) so that the sealant can seal the damaged area.

Note: *If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, do not proceed to the second stage of this operation. Reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road to call for roadside assistance*

Note: *When pumping in the sealant through the tire valve, the pressure may rise up to 87 psi (6 bar) but will drop again after about 30 seconds.*

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped to 26 psi (1.8 bar) or below, the tire could be damaged beyond a temporary repair. Have your vehicle immediately checked. Do not drive your vehicle.*

Note: *If the tire pressure has dropped but is still above 26 psi (1.8 bar), use the kit to inflate the tire again.*

After Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit



WARNING: If you experience any unusual vibration, ride disturbance or noise while driving, reduce your speed until you can safely pull off to the side of the road and call for roadside assistance. Failure to do so could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and increase the risk of personal injury or death.

1. Stop your vehicle after driving approximately 10 km (6.2 mi). Check, and where necessary, adjust the pressure of the damaged tire.
2. Attach the tire sealant and the inflator kit and check the tire pressure from the pressure gauge D.

Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit

3. If the tire pressure is too high, deflate the tire to the specified pressure using the pressure relief valve B. If the tire pressure is less than the recommended pressure, repeat steps 13 to 16 and steps 1 to 2 (Checking the Tire Pressure). See **Tire Pressure Specifications** (page 458).
4. Once you have inflated the tire to its correct tire pressure, move the compressor switch F to position 0, remove the power plug E from the auxiliary power point, unscrew the sealant bottle hose, fasten the valve cap and replace the protective cap A.
5. Drive to the nearest tire specialist to get the damaged tire replaced. Before the tire is removed from the wheel, inform the tire specialist that the tire contains sealant. Renew the sealant bottle as soon as possible after it has been used once.

Note: *The temporary mobility kit only provides an emergency repair. Regulations concerning tire repair after using the temporary mobility kit may differ from country to country. You should consult a tire specialist for advice.*

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

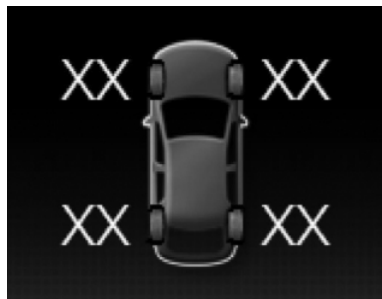
When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h (20 mph) for the warning indicator to turn off.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Tyre Pressure**.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - DIESEL/GASOLINE

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Note: If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Tyre Pressure**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

RESETTING TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

You must reset the tire pressure monitoring system after each tire replacement, tire rotation or after inflating the tires to the correct tire pressure.

Note: If you have a new sensor or have rotated the vehicle tires, park your vehicle for at least 20 minutes, before resetting the system.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system automatically re-learns the tire pressure sensors the next time you drive your vehicle for approximately 15 minutes.

1. Press the menu button on the steering wheel to enter the instrument cluster display main menu.
2. Select **Vehicle Maintenance**.
3. Select **Tyre Pressure**.
4. Press and hold the **OK** button until the system reset confirmation appears.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Tyre Pressure Low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h (20 mph) before the light turns off.
Tyre Pressure Monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE



WARNING: Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.



WARNING: Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.



WARNING: If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P), apply the parking brake, and switch the vehicle off.



WARNING: If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse (R) gear, apply the parking brake, and switch the vehicle off.



WARNING: Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead and set up a warning triangle if available.



WARNING: To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.

Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle.

If the spare wheel is the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, you can fit the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is not the same type and size as your vehicle road wheel, it has a label showing the maximum driving speed limit.



WARNING: If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

The locking wheel nut key is next to the vehicle jack.

You can obtain replacement locking wheel nuts or a locking wheel nut key using the reference number certificate.

Vehicle Jack Location in Van

The jack and tools are behind the driver seat. Turn the wing nut counter-clockwise until the jack can be removed.

Vehicle Jack Location in Kombi

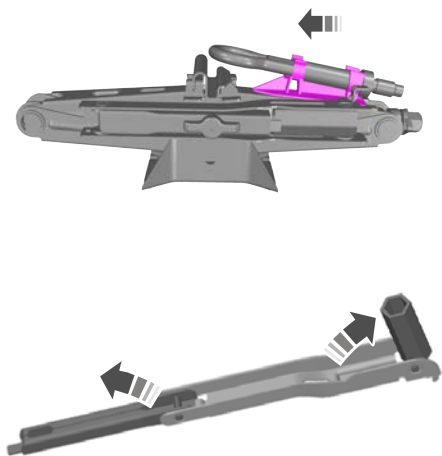
The jack and tools are under the passenger seat. Turn the wing nut counter-clockwise until the jack can be removed.

Removing the Spare Wheel

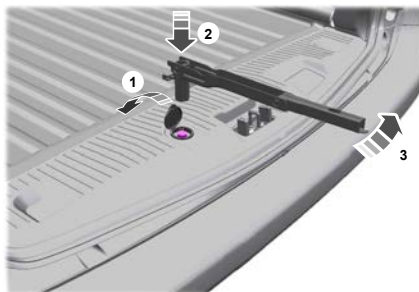
The spare wheel is under the rear of your vehicle and removed using a winch system.

Note: Before you start assembling the jack, make sure you remove the towing eye holder from the jack by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.

Changing a Road Wheel



1. Dissassemble the jack as shown in the illustration.
2. Open the liftgate or the rear doors.



3. Insert the short arm of the jack handle into the socket in the sequence shown. Turn it counterclockwise until the spare wheel rests on the ground and the cable is loose.

Note: Make sure you do not break the cover of the socket when turning the jack handle.



E146811

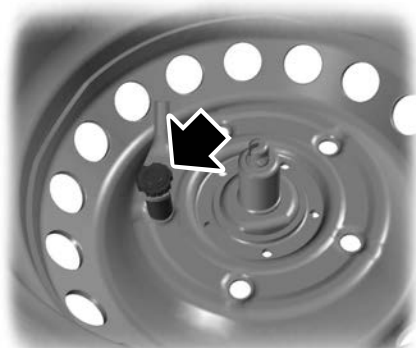
4. Raise the cable end cover.



E146812

5. Rotate the cable through 90°. Slide the cable through the slot to release the spare wheel bracket from the winch.

Changing a Road Wheel



E146813

6. Remove the retaining nut to release the spare wheel bracket.

Removing the Road Wheel

WARNING: Only use the spare wheel and tire assembly provided as original equipment with your vehicle.

WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

WARNING: When you install a wheel, remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of

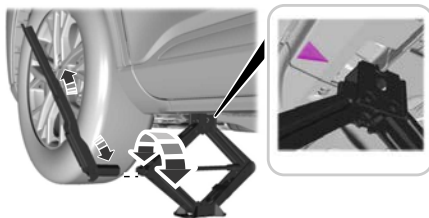
the wheel. Installing wheels without following these steps can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

1. Insert the flat end of the wheel brace between the wheel rim and the wheel trim and carefully remove the wheel trim.

Note: Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground.

2. Install the locking wheel nut key.
3. Loosen the wheel nuts and locking wheel nut.



WARNING: The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Changing a Road Wheel

WARNING: No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

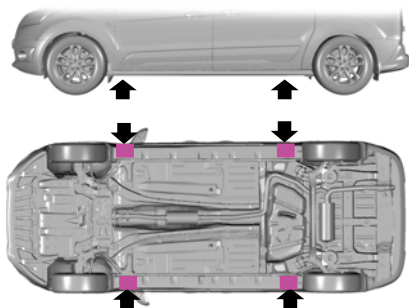
WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

WARNING: Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

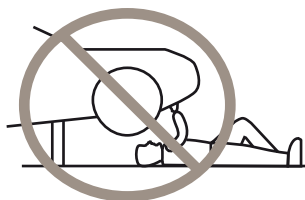
Note: *Indentations in the sills show the location of the jacking points.*

4. Find the correct jacking points.

Note: *Do not jack on the outboard sill, only use the specified jacking points.*



1. Correctly position the vehicle jack.



2. Place the hexagonal end of the lug nut tool onto the vehicle jack.
3. Turn the lug nut tool clockwise to raise your vehicle.
4. Raise your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
5. Remove the wheel nuts and the locking wheel nut.
6. Remove the wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel

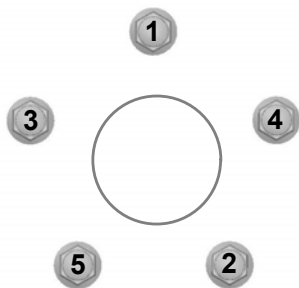
WARNING: Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel studs and the wheel nuts. This can cause the wheel nuts to loosen while driving.

WARNING: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle.

1. Install the wheel.

Note: *Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.*

Changing a Road Wheel



E75442

2. Install all of the wheel nuts and partially tighten them in the sequence shown.

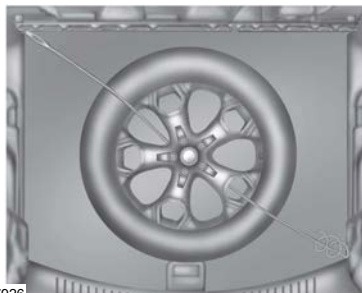
Note: Make sure that the cones on the wheel nuts are against the wheel.

Note: Alloy wheel wheel nuts are suitable for use on a steel spare wheel.

3. Lower your vehicle and remove the vehicle jack.
4. Install the locking wheel nut key.
5. Fully tighten the wheel nuts in the sequence shown. See **Wheel Nuts** (page 476).
6. Install the wheel trim.
7. Stow the flat tire on the floor in the cargo area. Secure with the flat tire retainer strap by following the next steps:



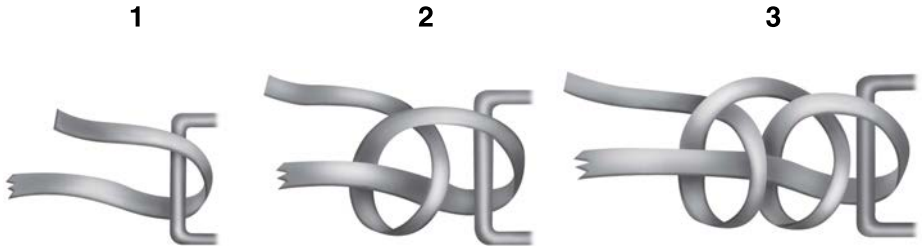
8. Locate the cargo tie-down near the seatback. Push the loop of the retainer strap through the tie-down. Thread the non-loop end through the loop.



E157926

9. Weave the retainer strap through the wheel openings.
10. Locate the front cargo tie-down at the opposite corner of the cargo area to the tie-down used in Step 8. Thread the retainer strap through the tie-down and pull tight.
11. Secure by tying a 2-half hitch knot.

Changing a Road Wheel



Note: Have the wheel nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

Note: If the spare wheel is different in size or construction to the road wheels, have this replaced as soon as possible.

Note: Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.

Note: Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.

Note: The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced when the spare wheel is fitted. Take care when parking next to a curb.

Note: If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, drive the shortest distance possible.

WHEEL NUTS



WARNING: Only use the specific wheel nuts and wheels provided as original equipment with your vehicle. If in doubt, contact an authorized dealer.



WARNING: Do not install alloy wheels using wheel nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Nm (lb.ft)
135 (100)

You can obtain a replacement locking wheel nut key and replacement locking wheel nuts from an authorized dealer using the reference number certificate.

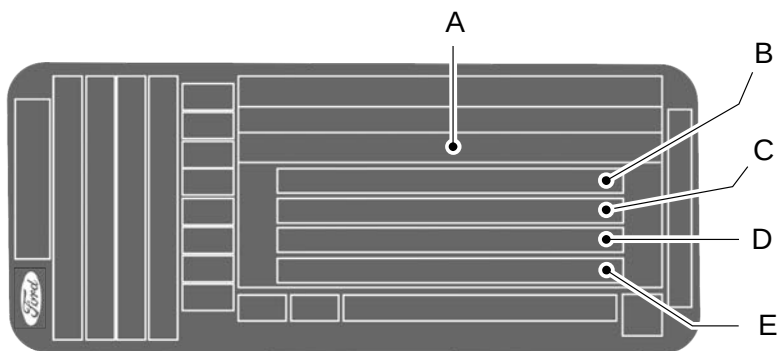


A Wheel pilot bore.

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



- A Vehicle identification number.
- B Gross vehicle weight.
- C Gross train weight.
- D Maximum front axle weight.
- E Maximum rear axle weight.

Note: The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.

Note: Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE - DIESEL/GASOLINE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Ford app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the Ford app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING THE FORD APP TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the Ford app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your Ford app account.
6. Confirm that Ford app account is connected to the modem.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View Available Networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

CONNECTED VEHICLE SETTINGS

You can adjust several settings on the touchscreen under the connected vehicle features menu, such as:

- Vehicle connectivity.
- Share vehicle data.
- Share vehicle location.
- Share driving data.

Note: Depending on your vehicle, different options may be available.

Note: Editing connectivity settings could result in some features not operating correctly or at all. When you edit connectivity settings, pop-up messages may appear to notify you that services will not work without that setting. If you switch a feature on, pop-up messages could appear informing you of the settings that will be turned on. Some features, for example driver assistance features, use map data. We recommend having all connected vehicle settings enabled to allow the map content to be updated to the latest version.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is my Ford app not connecting to my vehicle?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Connected Vehicle

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.
- Some network security types are not supported, for example WEP.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

Note: The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Hotspot Visibility**.

Note: The hotspot visibility default setting is on.

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.

Note: The network name is the hotspot name.

4. Press **Show Password**.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: Secure websites do not redirect.

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

Note: If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

Note: If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

Note: If you carry out a vehicle system reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

Note: The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Network Name**.
6. Enter your required network name.
7. Press **Done**.
8. Press **Change Password**.
9. Enter your required password.
10. Press **Done**.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

Note: *The Vehicle Hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will be unable to connect your device to the Vehicle Hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
3. Press **Settings**.
4. Press **Edit**.
5. Press **Change Frequency Band**.
6. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not see the vehicle hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure the vehicle hotspot is switched on.
- Make sure hidden network is switched off under the hotspot security menu.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

What should I do if my phone shows "No internet connection" when connecting to the vehicle hotspot?

- Check the status of your data plan.
- If your subscription is active, try moving the vehicle to an open area to improve reception.

What should I do if my phone shows "This network is operating on Wi-Fi channels in use by several other nearby networks" when connecting to the vehicle hotspot?

- Restart your vehicle.
- Move your vehicle to a different location.
- In the vehicle hotspot settings, switch between the 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz frequency.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control or on the touchscreen.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

1. Select **Sources**.
2. Select the desired source by pressing the tile on the touchscreen.

MEDIA CONTROL BUTTONS



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.

Note: *Not all sources can be paused.*

Note: *In case the source is not paused audio is muted.*



Press the button to skip to the next track.

Press and hold the button to fast forward through the track.



Press the button once to return to the beginning of a track.

Repeatedly press the button to return to previous tracks.

Press and hold the button to fast rewind through the track.



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

Note: *Not all sources have shuffle mode.*



Press the button on the touchscreen to change repeat mode.

Note: *Not all sources have repeat mode.*

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



E391071

Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

Audio System

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

You may find the presets in a line at the bottom of the touchscreen when you open the radio screen. Your vehicle comes with a list of presets. Press and hold any preset to store a new radio station and override an existing preset.

Note: A maximum of thirty presets can be stored depending on the selected number of preset pages.

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

Note: The mute function is only available for sources that cannot be paused.

Note: You can mute the audio system by decreasing the volume to 0.

SCROLLING THROUGH MENU ITEMS

Use the touchscreen to scroll through menu items.

SELECTING A MENU ITEM

Use the touchscreen to select a menu item.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

1.  Press the settings icon on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Select the desired menu point and adjust the settings.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Set the time.

Note: The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

FM RADIO

FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING AN FM RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.

Audio System

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.



Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List



Press this icon on the touchscreen to view available stations.

SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Display**.
3. Press **Calm screen** to switch the display off.
4. Press the touchscreen to switch the display back on.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Changing Radio Stations

Use the touchscreen to change radio stations.

Note: *You can recall radio stations using the preset buttons.*

Automatically Changing Radio Stations



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Audio System



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the next preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station up the frequency band.



Press the button on the steering wheel to switch to the previous preset.

Press and hold to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Selecting a Station from the List



Press this icon on the touchscreen to view available stations.

Center Display Overview

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, features that are not critical while driving are not available when the vehicle is moving at or above 8 km/h (5 mph).

STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

Audio System



Audio system muted.

Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle Software Update

See **Software Update Indicators** (page 504).

Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

Center Display Overview

FEATURE BAR - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH CENTER DISPLAY SCREEN

The feature bar is located on the bottom of the display and allows you to access vehicle features.



Press to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a **Bluetooth®** device.



Press to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone.



Press to use the navigation system.



Press to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device.



Press to adjust system settings.



Press to view features.

Note: *The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.*

INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.

You can swipe up or down to view a different card.

Note: *On some screens, you can swipe a card toward the center of the screen to move the content into the main screen.*

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and volume down button for 10 seconds.

Voice Interaction

WHAT IS VOICE INTERACTION

Voice Interaction allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

SETTING THE WAKE WORD

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on.
4. Press **Preferred Wake Word**.
5. Press a setting.

BEGINNING A VOICE INTERACTION

Say the selected wake word followed by your command.



You can also press the button on the steering wheel to begin a voice interaction. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

VOICE INTERACTION EXAMPLES

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Ford Assistant**.
3. Press **Voice Command Help**.
4. Press a menu option on the list for the relevant examples.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Alexa Built-In

WHAT IS ALEXA BUILT-IN

Alexa Built-In allows you to use Alexa in your vehicle for auto-specific use cases on the road and gives you access to an ever-evolving number of skills that help to make your life more productive, entertaining, and connected while using your vehicle.

ALEXA BUILT-IN REQUIREMENTS

To use Alexa, all of the following must occur:

- Your vehicle is added to your Ford app account.
- You are signed in to an existing Amazon account.
- Vehicle location services are enabled.
- Vehicle connectivity and vehicle data sharing are enabled.

Note: *Support and functionality may vary based on the country where your Ford app account is registered.*

SIGNING IN TO YOUR ACCOUNT



Press the button in the status bar and follow the on-screen prompts.

To sign in using the settings menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Get Started**.
4. Sign in to your account by either scanning the QR code or entering the on-screen code into the Amazon website.

5. Once signed in, follow the on-screen prompts.
6. When complete, the vehicle informs you that Alexa is ready to be used in the vehicle.

Signing Out of Your Account

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Sign Out**.

USING ALEXA BUILT-IN

To use Alexa, say “Alexa” or press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel and then say “Alexa” to invoke Alexa to start listening.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

You can use Alexa for the following and more:

- Entertainment.
- Hands-free calling.
- Traffic and navigation.
- Vehicle controls.
- Smart home device control.
- Weather and news information.

ALEXA BUILT-IN SETTINGS

Enabling the Wake Word

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Switch **Listen for Wake Word** on or off.

Note: *If the wake word is not enabled, you can only use the voice interaction button.*

Contact List

Displays a list of connected phones and contact sharing status for each phone.

Alexa Built-In

To change the contact sharing status:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Contact List**.
4. Enable or disable sharing for each phone.

Note: *You can share contacts from more than one phone at a time.*

Things to Try

Learn more about what you can do with Alexa by browsing the things to try.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Amazon Alexa**.
3. Press **Things to Try**.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.
3. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

5. Download the phonebook from your cell phone when you are prompted.

Note: If you pair more than one cell phone, use the phone settings on the center display to specify the primary phone. You can change this setting at any time.

PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

Recent Calls

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Favourites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Note: Up to 12 devices can be stored.

Do Not Disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

Note: Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Calls	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.



Press this icon to accept the call.

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.



Press this icon to reject the call.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the name of the contact or phone number displays on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:



Press this icon to access the phone keypad.



You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.



Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.



Immediately end a phone call.

Note: You can also end the call by pressing the button on the steering wheel.

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

IOS

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the information icon to the right of your vehicle.
4. Switch text message notification on or off.

Android

1. Go to the settings menu on your cell phone.
2. Select **Bluetooth®**.
3. Select the profiles option.
4. Select the phone profile.
5. Switch text message notification on or off.

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Add phone** on the touchscreen.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

3. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

4. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

2. Press the audio system tile on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Sources**.
4. Press **Bluetooth**.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

APP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.

Note: Some apps can run through **Apple CarPlay** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE

1. Press **Apps** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Mobile Apps Help**.

3. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®**.

Note: Some apps can run through **Android Auto** if it is enabled.

4. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.

Note: The app must be open on your device to use it through the touchscreen.

5. Access the system applications.

6. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Some devices could lose the ability to play music over USB when **Mobile Apps** are enabled.

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Apps

Note: Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device will prepare the device for wireless carplay when you re-enter the vehicle.

Enabling Wireless Apple CarPlay

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
- 4.



Press this icon to switch Apple CarPlay on or off.

Switching Android Auto On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Phone List**.
3. Select your device from the list.
- 4.



Press this icon to switch Android Auto on or off.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO™ ON AND OFF

Enabling Android Auto with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Enabling Wireless Android Auto

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

Navigation

CONNECTED NAVIGATION

Your vehicle may be equipped with connected navigation. After the trial period, you need to sign up to continue the experience. For additional information, visit ford.com/connectedservices.

Note: *If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.*

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

Access navigation by pressing the map on the touchscreen.

Note: *As the driver, be aware of all local traffic regulations and road attributes, and operate your vehicle in a safe and legal manner.*

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update the Map data, you need to have a connected navigation subscription and your vehicle modem must be enabled. See **Connected Navigation** (page 499). See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 479).

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to <https://mapcreator.here.com/>.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the touchscreen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP

Press the map format button on the touchscreen to toggle between the available formats.

Note: *Available formats are 2D, 3D and North Up.*

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press the search button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press the search button on the keyboard.
5. Select a destination from the list.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

1. Press the map on the touchscreen to place a pin at a location.
2. Press the bar at the bottom of the screen to show more information about the location of the pin.
3. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

Navigation

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the touchscreen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION

1. Press the search button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the recents button.
3. Select a destination from the list.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

1. Press the search button on the touchscreen.
2. Press the favorites button.
3. Select a saved destination.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

Note: Press the star icon when viewing location details to save the location.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

1. Press the search button on the top of the touchscreen.
2. Press Explore.
3. Press a menu item from the list.
4. Follow the prompts on the screen to begin navigation.

Note: You may also press a point of interest icon on the map to set it as your destination.

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT

1. Press the search button on the touchscreen during an active navigation session.
2. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
3. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
4. Press the search button on the keyboard.
5. Select your destination from the list.
6. Follow the prompts on the screen to add a waypoint.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the next step indicator on the top of the touchscreen during an active navigation session to hear the last voice instruction.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

TRAILER TOWING NAVIGATION

The system calculates the best route for trailer towing by avoiding dangerous road conditions based on the dimensions of your trailer.

Note: *This feature is only available if you properly attach the trailer to your vehicle.*

Switching Trailer Towing Navigation On and Off

1. Press the tools button on the bottom corner of the touchscreen.
2. Press the settings button.
3. Press the guidance button.
4. Press Smart Trailer Navigation.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to switch trailer towing navigation on or off.

Vehicle Software Updates

VEHICLE SOFTWARE UPDATES - VEHICLES WITH: DOUBLE LOCKING

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 480).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on the top of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 504).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.

- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Enable double lock.
 - You can re-enable double lock with the key fob after the update completes.
- Arm the alarm.
 - The alarm automatically rearms after the update completes.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

VEHICLE SOFTWARE UPDATES - VEHICLES WITH: SINGLE LOCKING

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 480).

Vehicle Software Updates

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most non-drivable updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours.

You are notified of vehicle software update status on the top of touchscreen. You can also see the notifications in your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 504).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.
- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Arm the alarm.
 - The alarm automatically rearms after the update completes.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Software Updates**.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Vehicle Software Updates

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we recommend switching Automatic Updates on.

Note: *Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.*

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Recurring Schedule**.
2. Select the days and time for updates.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates when available. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: *The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.*

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.
2. Press **Update Now**.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu, press **Update Details**.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.

You can perform multiple resets from this menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

AUTHORIZED DEALER DIRECTORY

Turkey Only

You can find the contact information for all authorized dealers on www.ford.com.tr or www.servis.gov.tr. For more information, you can contact us at 444-3673.

Name	Telephone	Address	City
GİZERLER	(322) 346 80 80	Levent Mah. Eski Ceyhan Yolu Üzeri 5. Km No: 210 Yüreğir/ Adana	Adana
OTOKOÇ ADANA	(322) 441 17 17	Mersin Yolu Üzeri 9. Km Sarı Hamzalı Köyü Mevkii Merkez/ Adana	Adana
İNTERTEKS	(416) 227 24 01	Adıyaman Gölbaşı Karayolu Üzeri Küçük Sanayi Sitesi Karşısı Merkez/Adıyaman	Adıyaman
GLS GELİŞİM OTOMOTİV	(382) 245 44 14	Bahçesaray Mahallesi 135. Cadde No: 216 Aksaray	Aksaray
BAŞER	(312) 269 80 00	Ayaş Yolu Çatalkara Sokak No:199 Sincan/Ankara	Ankara
KARTAŞ	(312) 583 85 60	Tevfik İleri Mh. Özal Bulvarı No: 55 Pursaklar/Ankara	Ankara
OTOKOÇ ANKARA	(312) 207 47 00	Eskişehir Yolu 12. Km No:350 Ümitköy/Ankara	Ankara
TAN OTO	(312) 591 34 34	Fatih Sultan Mehmet Bulvarı No:252 Macunköy,Yenima- halle/Ankara	Ankara
BİLALLER	(242) 259 33 70	Sarısu Mah. 121. Sk. No:30/A- B Konyaaltı/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ALANYA	(242) 515 13 80	Çevreyolu Üzeri No: 1 Tosmur Beldesi Alanya/Antalya	Antalya
OTOKOÇ ANTALYA	(242) 340 26 85	Altınova Sinan Mah. Havaalanı Yolu Üzeri Merkez/Antalya	Antalya
KAHYAOĞULLARI	(256) 633 10 01	Söke Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Kuşa- dası/Aydın	Aydın

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ZAFER	(256) 219 40 00	Aydın-İzmir Karayolu 1.Km (Aymas Bitişiği) Merkez/Aydın	Aydın
AKOTO EDREMİT	(266) 374 06 65	İzmir Yolu Üzeri 2. Km. Ilıcalar Mevkii Edremit/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
AKOTO Merkez	(266) 283 00 10	İzmir Yolu 8. Km Osb Kavşağı Merkez/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
MUSLUBAŞLAR	(266) 721 21 21	600 Evler Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 95 Bandırma/Balıkesir	Balıkesir
OĞUZCAN	(488) 218 02 23	Gültepe Mahallesi Demokrasi Bulvarı No: 401 Merkez/ Batman	Batman
OTOKOÇ BURSA	(224) 270 39 00	29 Ekim Mah. İzmir Yolu Cad. No: 380/A Nilüfer/Bursa	Bursa
SÖNMEZ KOÇ	(224) 261 22 44	Yeni Yalova Yolu 9. Km Sönmez Asf. Karşısı Merkez/ Bursa	Bursa
ARSLANLAR	(286) 263 06 25	İzmir Yolu 5. Km Merkez/ Çanakkale	Çanakkale
EVLÜCE OTO	(364) 235 02 12	Ankara Asfaltı 7. Km Merkez/ Çorum	Çorum
YARGÜL	(258) 371 23 79	Akçeşme Mevkii Menderes Bulvarı No: 161 Gümüşler/ Denizli	Denizli
DİYARBAKIR OTO	(412) 255 04 45	Şanlıurfa Yolu Üzeri 4 Km Merkez/Diyarbakır	Diyarbakır
GÖRÜR	(380) 537 53 15	Taşköprü Köyü E-5 Mahallesi No: 55 Düzce	Düzce
TUZCULAR	(284) 763 11 23	Ford Plaza İstanbul Yolu 7. Km Merkez/Edirne	Edirne
ÇETİNKAYALAR	(424) 247 40 31	Malatya Yolu 8. Km Baskil Yol Kavşağı Merkez/Elazığ	Elazığ
CİNDİLLİ OTOMOTİV	(442) 242 00 13	Tortum Yolu Üzeri 3. Km Cindilli Ford Plaza Erzurum	Erzurum

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ ESKİŞEHİR	(222) 335 10 10	Şirintepe Mh. İsmet İnönü 2. Cad. No: 64 Tepebaşı Merkez/ Eskişehir	Eskişehir
DOĞANLAR	(342) 323 23 13	Mücahitler Mahallesi Sani Konukoğlu Bulvarı No:28/A Şehitkamil/Gaziantep	Gaziantep
OVALI ANTAKYA	(326) 221 61 65	İskenderun Yolu Üzeri 5. Km Antakya/Hatay	Hatay
OVALI İSKEN- DERUN	(326) 618 38 38	İsmet İnönü Mah.İbrahim Karaoğlu Cad.No: 38 Hatay/İskenderun	Hatay
SÜRKİT OTOM.	(476) 210 11 38	Söğütlü Mevkii Çevre Yolu Üzeri Ford Plaza Merkez/Iğdır	Iğdır
GÜRSOY	(232) 464 02 50	Merkez Mah. Gazi Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı Blv. Gürsoy Oto. Gürsoy No: 872 Mezitli/Mersin	İçel
ASF	(216) 427 37 47	Soğanlık Yeni Mah. Soğanlık D-100 Kuzey Yanyol Cad. 30 B/Kartal/İstanbul	İstanbul
ATILGAN SANC- AKTEPE	(216) 498 98 00	Veysel Karani Mahallesi, Aşık Reyhani Caddesi No: 14 Sanc- aktepe/İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ B.ÇEKMECE	(212) 863 84 10	Mimarsinan Merkez Mah.E-5 Londra Asfaltı No: 57 B. Çekmece İstanbul	İstanbul
ÇETAŞ MAHMUTBEY	(212) 454 40 00	Göztepe Mah. Rahim Sok. No: 2-4 Bağcılar/İstanbul	İstanbul
GÜRBAŞLAR	(216) 465 33 61	Göztepe Mah. Atatürk Cad. No: 12 Migros karşısı A.Hisarı/ İstanbul	İstanbul
KAR OTOMOTİV	(212) 612 49 49	Defterdar Mah. Fethi Çelebi Cad. No: 23/1 Eyüp/İstanbul	İstanbul
KELEŞLER	(212) 417 39 15	Uluyol Cad. No: 25/A Bayrampaşa/İstanbul	İstanbul
KENT OTOMOTİV	(212) 423 53 00	Saadetdere Mah. 68. Sok. No: 40 Esenyurt/İstanbul	İstanbul

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL İSTİNYE	(212) 229 95 55	İstinye Mah. Sarıyer Cad. No: 70/C Yeniköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
OTOKOÇ İSTANBUL TAŞDELEN	(216) 430 12 00	Çamlık Mah. Çobandere Mevkii Sırrı Çelik Bulvarı No: 9A/9B, Şile Otobanı 11. Km Taşdelen, Çekmeköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
TEPRETOĞULLARI	(216) 545 03 33	Acıbadem Mah Köftüncü Sokak No: 1/3 Kadıköy/İstanbul	İstanbul
ARKAS İZMİR	(232) 399 34 34	Anadolu Cad. No: 687/C Karşıyaka/İzmir Karşıyaka/İzmir	İzmir
ÇETAŞ İZMİR	(232) 478 07 07	Ankara Cad. Naldöken Mah. No: 319 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
İZKAR	(232) 254 38 00	Akçay Cad. No: 49 Gaziemir/İzmir	İzmir
OTOKOÇ İZMİR	(232) 498 90 00	Kazım Dirik Mah. 296. Sokak No: 1 Bornova/İzmir	İzmir
METİNLER	(352) 224 54 54	Konaklar Mevkii Sivas Cad. No: 244 Kayseri	Kayseri
ÜNAL	(352) 311 55 00	Anbar Mahallesi Osman Kavuncu Bulvarı No: 498 Anbar, Melikgazi/Kayseri	Kayseri
ÇANGAR	(392) 227 05 55	Soyak Evleri Mevkii, Küçükkaymaklı Mah. Şehit Mustafa Ruso Cad. Lefkoşe/Kıbrıs	Kıbrıs
ACAMAR	(262) 606 10 10	Köşklü Çeşme Mah. İstanbul Cad. No:87 41400 Gebze/Kocaeli	Kocaeli
ESOTO	(262) 335 43 15	Sanayi Mah. D-130 Yanyol Cad. No: 79 Merkez/Kocaeli	Kocaeli
OTOKOÇ KONYA	(332) 255 42 33	İstanbul Yolu Üzeri Sancak Mah. Büyükkırmak Sk. No:1 Selçuklu Merkez/Konya	Konya

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
ILICAK	(422) 444 59 55	1.OSB Mahallesi Havaalanı Yolu 2.Cadde No: 14/1 Yeşilyurt/MALATYA	Malatya
ÇETAŞ MANİSA	(236) 233 84 00	Güzelyurt Mah. Menemen Cad. No:15/A Manisa	Manisa
ÇETAŞ SALİHLİ	(236) 716 16 00	Ankara Asfaltı 3. km. Salihli/ Manisa	Manisa
NAS OTO	(482) 312 04 44	Havaalanı Yanı 47100 Merkez/ Mardin	Mardin
HELVACIOĞLU BODRUM	(252) 358 68 38	Açık Kırklar Mevkii Atatürk Bulvarı No: 289 Konacık, Bodrum/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU FETHİYE	(252) 646 57 77	Karaçulha Belediyesi Cumhuriyet Cad. No: 199 Fethiye/Muğla	Muğla
HELVACIOĞLU Merkez	(252) 212 80 00	Orhaniye Mah. Uğur Mumcu Bulvarı No: 17 Merkez/Muğla	Muğla
ALTAŞ	(452) 234 19 20	Cumhuriyet Mah. Mustafa Kemal Bulvarı No:102 Merkez/ Ordu	Ordu
ATILGAN RİZE	(464) 226 01 85	Cumhuriyet Çay Fabrikası Karşısı Gündoğdu Rize	Rize
AKGÜN	(264) 276 72 10	Hanlıköy Mahallesi Eskişehir Caddesi No: 93/A Arifiye/ Sakarya	Sakarya
OTOKOÇ SAMSUN	(362) 266 61 12	Samsun-Trabzon Karayolu 10. Km Kutlukent Tekkeköy/ Samsun	Samsun
KURT	(346) 502 58 58	Yeşilyurt Mah. Sultanşehir Blv. 146 Merkez/Sivas	Sivas
ŞANLIURFA OTO	(414) 316 62 27	Mardin Yolu 3.Km Jandarma Karşısı Merkez/Şanlıurfa	Şanlıurfa
DÖNÜŞÜM	(486) 616 76 16	Nusaybin Yolu Üzeri Cizre Çıkışı 8. Km Habur Tesisleri Yanı Nerme Mevkii Çavuşlu Köyü, Cizre/Şırnak	Şırnak

Your Authorized Dealer - Turkey

Name	Telephone	Address	City
VOLKAN Çorlu	(282) 685 42 90	E-5 Karayolu Üzeri Önerler Mevkii Mücavir Mah. İstanbul Cad. 43/A, Çorlu/Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
VOLKAN Tekirdağ	(282) 293 38 82	Hürriyet Mah. Sami Efendi Sok. No:2 Süleymanpaşa/ Tekirdağ	Tekirdağ
ORUÇLAR	(356) 214 41 43	Yeniyurt Mah. Vali Zekai Gümüşdiş Blv. No: 55/A Tokat	Tokat
TUNALAR	(462) 248 12 00	Tunalar Ford Plaza Yıldızlı/ Trabzon	Trabzon
AKKÖPRÜLÜ	(434) 217 17 17	Şabaniye Mah. İpekyolu 4. Km Merkez/Van	Van
ERDEĞER	(226) 351 73 50	Kılıç Köyü Şakşak Mevkii Çift- likköy/Yalova	Yalova
AZİM OTO	(372) 323 98 40	Muammer Aksoy Cad. No: 38 Karadeniz Ereğli/Zonguldak	Zonguldak

Service Intervals - Turkey

SERVICE INTERVALS

Turkey Only

Model	Service Interval (Whichever Occurs First)	
• All passenger vehicles. • Ranger. • Tourneo Connect. • Tourneo Courier. • Transit Connect. • Transit Courier.	1 year	15,000 km (9,500 mi)
• Tourneo Custom. • Transit. • Transit Custom.	1 year	20,000 km (12,500 mi)
• All electric vehicles.	1 year	Unlimited.

Note: Service intervals may vary depending on engine options. For information about the service interval details of your vehicle, please refer to the local Ford website.

Customer Information

ROLLOVER WARNING



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

BATTERY PERFORMANCE AND DURABILITY INFORMATION - BATTERY ELECTRIC VEHICLE

The provided electrochemical performance and durability values are in accordance with the EU Battery Regulation 2023/1542 - Article 10.

Certified usable battery energy (kWh)	46
Rated capacity (Ah)	159.2
Capacity fade (%)	14.2
Power (W)	177300
Power fade (%)	1.2
Internal resistance (Ω)	0.045
Internal resistance increase (%)	13
Energy round trip efficiency (%); and its fade (%)	97.1; 5.3

Customer Information

Minimum expected lifetime of the battery under reference conditions for which it has been designed (cycles; calendar years)	1000; 8
Battery manufacturer	Ford Otosan, Craiova ¹
Battery importer	N/A

¹ **Ford Otosan, Craiova** Ford-Werke GmbH, Henry-Ford-Str. 1., 50735 Köln, Germany, Battery Assembly Plant: Craiova, elveu@ford.com

Digital Battery Passport



Scan the code or visit <https://battery.dpp.ford> to access information about your hybrid or electric vehicle battery in accordance with EU Battery Regulation 2023/1542.

Note: The VIN-number of your vehicle is required to access the information.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

You can locate radio frequency certification labels and declarations of conformity for components on your vehicle at your local Ford or Lincoln website along with your owner information.

For more information scan here:



<https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>

Customer Information

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual.

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents happen sometimes. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty.

The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts.

For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

ECALL USER INFORMATION

eCall User Information According to Regulation (EU) 2017/78, Annex I, Part 3

1 DESCRIPTION OF THE ECALL IN-VEHICLE SYSTEM

- 1.1. Overview of the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, its operation and functionalities: See **What Is eCall** (page 63).
- 1.2. The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.
- 1.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated by default. It is activated automatically by means of in-vehicle sensors in the event of a severe accident. It will also be triggered automatically when the vehicle is equipped with a TPS system which does not function in the event of a severe accident.
- 1.4. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed. Instructions for manual activation of the system: See **Manually Making an Emergency Call** (page 63).
- 1.5. In the event of a critical system failure that would disable the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle: See **Emergency Call Indicators** (page 64).

2 INFORMATION ON DATA PROCESSING

- 2.1. Any processing of personal data through the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (1) and 2002/58/EC (2) of the European Parliament and of the Council, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (3).
- 2.2. Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of handling the emergency eCall to the single European emergency number 112.
- 2.3. Types of data and its recipients.
- 2.3.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system may collect and process only the following data:
 - Vehicle Identification Number.
 - Vehicle type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle).
 - Vehicle propulsion storage type (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electric/hydrogen).
 - Vehicle last three locations and direction of travel.

Customer Information

- Log file of the automatic activation of the system and its timestamp.
 - Any additional data (if applicable): See **Emergency Call System Data** (page 30).
- 2.3.2. Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country on which territory they are located, to first receive and handle eCalls to the single European emergency number 112.
Additional information (if available): -
- 2.4. Arrangements for data processing.
- 2.4.1. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that the data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.2. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that it is not traceable and not subject to any constant tracking in its normal operation status.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.4.3. The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed in such a way as to ensure that data in the system internal memory is automatically and continuously removed.
- 2.4.3.1. The vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so as always to keep maximum of the last three up-to-date locations of the vehicle necessary for the normal functioning of the system.
- 2.4.3.2. The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.
Additional remarks (if any): -
- 2.5. Modalities for exercising data subject's rights.
- 2.5.1. The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC. Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.
- 2.5.2. The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Customer Information

- 2.5.3. Contact service responsible for handling access requests (if any): Contact the data protection officer of your local Public Safety Answering Point.
- (1) Directive 95/46/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 24 October 1995 on the protection of individuals with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (OJ L 281, 23.11.1995, p. 31).
 - (2) Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 12 July 2002 concerning the processing of personal data and the protection of privacy in the electronic communications sector (Directive on privacy and electronic communications) (OJ L 201, 31.7.2002, p. 37).
 - (3) Directive 95/46/EC is repealed by Regulation (EU) 2016/679 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 27 April 2016 on the protection of natural persons with regard to the processing of personal data and on the free movement of such data (General Data Protection Regulation) (OJ L 119, 4.5.2016, p. 1). The Regulation applies from 25 May 2018.

3 INFORMATION ON THIRD PARTY SERVICES AND OTHER ADDED VALUE SERVICES (IF FITTED)

- 3.1. Description of the operation and the functionalities of the TPS system/added value service: Your vehicle may be equipped with a modem that allows for emergency calls (eCall), automatic software updates and other services. See the information in this Owner's Manual or in the Ford app for a description of these services. We provide a 112-based eCall in-vehicle system and we do not provide a TPS eCall system.
- 3.2. Any processing of personal data through the TPS system/other added value service shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC and 2002/58/EC.
- 3.2.1. Legal basis for the use of TPS system and/or added value services and for processing data through them: For information on the legal bases for processing of personal data through added value services, review the data privacy information for any services to which you subscribe. This privacy information can be found in the Ford app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.3. The TPS system and/or other added value services shall process personal data only on the base of the explicit consent of the data subject (the vehicle's owner or owners).

Customer Information

- 3.4. Modalities for data processing through TPS system and/or other added value services, including any necessary additional information regarding traceability, tracking and processing of personal data: See the privacy information in the Ford app or on the local Ford website.
- 3.5. The owner of a vehicle equipped with a TPS eCall system and/or other added value service in addition to the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system has the right to choose to use the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system rather than the TPS eCall system and the other added value service.
- 3.5.1. Contact details for handling TPS eCall system deactivation requests: You can have all added value services deactivated except for eCall. To find out more about having all added value services deactivated except for eCall, search Ask Ford on the local Ford website or contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center by e-mail through the Ford app or by using the e-mail address on the local Ford website.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

Customer Information

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:**

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:**

You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.

- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.

- **Internet-Based Services**

Components: The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.

- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional

Customer Information

charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.

- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

Customer Information

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.

Customer Information

- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following: (a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances; (c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service; (d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Customer Information

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Customer Information

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Customer Information

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- I. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit the TeleNav website from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

<https://www.telenav.com>

Customer Information



1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or

Customer Information

its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)** distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the

TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENNAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENNAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENNAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENNAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE

Customer Information

POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration,

both TeleNav and you agree to submit to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Customer Information

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Customer Information

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Customer Information

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Customer Information

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal
government agency, or any federal official
refuses to use the legend provided herein,
the Contracting Officer, federal
government agency, or any federal official
must notify HERE prior to seeking
additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User
Terms for any Application containing
Data for the United States shall contain
the following notices:

"HERE holds a non-exclusive license
from the United States Postal
Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4®
information."

"©United States Postal Service®
20XX. Prices are not established,
controlled or approved by the United
States Postal Service®. The following
trademarks and registrations are
owned by the USPS: United States
Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

B. Canada Data. The following provi-
sions apply to the Data for Canada,
which may include or reflect data from
third party licensors ("Third Party
Data"), including Her Majesty the Queen
in Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"),
Canada Post Corporation ("Canada
Post") and the Department of Natural
Resources of Canada ("NRCan"):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client
agrees that its use of the Third Party
Data is subject to the following provi-
sions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data
is licensed on an "as is" basis. The
licensors of such data, including Her
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,
make no guarantees, representa-
tions or warranties respecting such
data, either express or implied,
arising by law or otherwise, including
but not limited to, effectiveness,
completeness, accuracy or fitness
for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third
Party Data licensors, including Her
Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan,
shall not be liable: (i) in respect of
any claim, demand or action, irre-
spective of the nature of the cause
of the claim, demand or action
alleging any loss, injury or damages,
direct or indirect, which may result
from the use or possession of such
Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of
revenues or contracts, or any other
consequential loss of any kind
resulting from any defect in the
Data.

Customer Information

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Customer Information

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía ("INEGI"):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice:
"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
-----------	--------

Argentina	IGN "INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO"
-----------	---

Ecuador	"INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011" "source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®"
---------	--

Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique Mexico	"Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)"
---	---

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
---------	--------

Jordan	"© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre". The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client's license with respect to the Jordan Data.
--------	--

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE's database for the country of Jordan ("Jordan Data") for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, "Enterprise Applications" shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Customer Information

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungsämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Customer Information

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"	Spain	"Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"	Sweden	"Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"	Switzerland	"Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"	E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"		
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."		
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."		
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."		
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"	VI. Australia Territory A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy: Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited.	
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"		

Customer Information

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelmatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

<https://www.pdma.com.au>



AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE

ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

Customer Information

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY. END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i) view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2 , and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Customer Information

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

Customer Information

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDb are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers ("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

Customer Information

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide, including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page below for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

<https://gracenote.com>



THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE

GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency

Customer Information

equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

<https://www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions>



1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

<https://www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions>



2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

Customer Information

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

CONVERTING OR MODIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

If converting or modifying your vehicle from production specification, refer to the Body and Equipment Mounting Manual at <https://www.fordpro.co.uk/en-gb/special-vehicles/overview/>.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, pipes, or hoses.

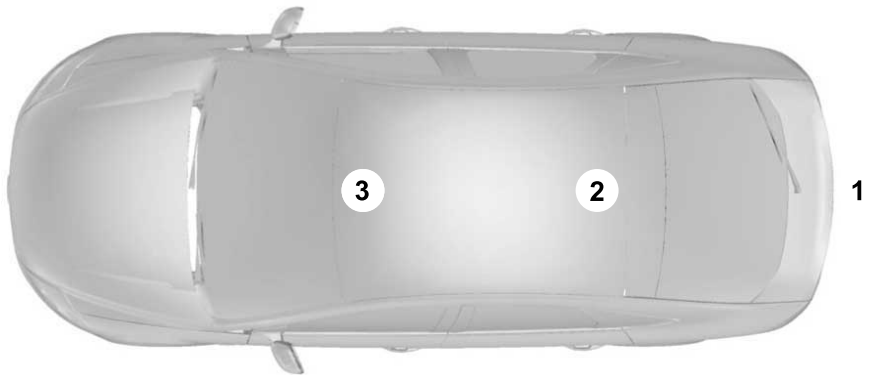


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm (4 in) from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth®** connectivity or satellite navigation.

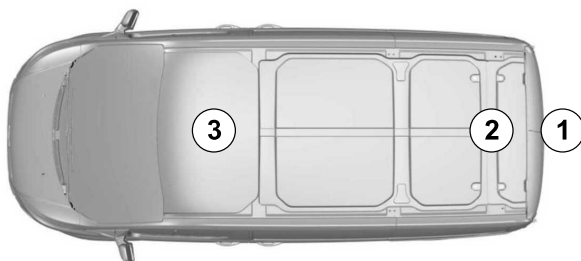
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cell phones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car

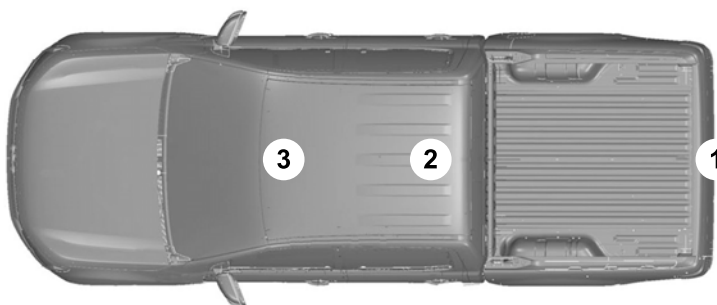


Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30 ¹	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-87	50	2, 3
144-174	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

¹ For battery electric vehicles and plug-in hybrid vehicles, this frequency is not approved when your vehicle is plugged-in and charging.

Note: After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the vehicle running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

Index

1

12V Battery.....	422
12V Battery Precautions.....	422
Battery Management System	
Limitations.....	423
Changing the 12V Battery.....	423
Charging the 12V Battery.....	425
How Does the Battery Management	
System Work.....	422
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V	
Battery.....	424
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....	424
What Is the Battery Management	
System.....	422
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Battery	
Electric Vehicle.....	427
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	427
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	427
12V Battery – Troubleshooting - Diesel/	
Gasoline.....	425
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	426
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	425
180 Degree Camera.....	291
180 Degree Camera Precautions.....	291

A

A/C

See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch	
Center Display Screen/Automatic	
Temperature Control.....	143
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch	
Center Display Screen, Vehicles Without:	
Air Conditioning.....	131
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch	
Center Display Screen/Automatic	
Temperature Control.....	134
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch	
Center Display Screen/Manual	
Temperature Control.....	139
About This Publication.....	19
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	261
Accessing Navigation.....	499
Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position.....	185

Accessing the Passive Key Backup	
Position - Vehicles With: Push Button	
Start.....	178
Accessing the Trip Computer.....	125
AC Charging.....	227
Charging at Home.....	227
Charging in Public.....	229
Charging Using Your Public Charge	
Cord.....	232
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	294
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	310
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.....	309
Lane Centering.....	304
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	307
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control.....	299
Adaptive Cruise Control Automatic	
Cancellation - Vehicles With: Adaptive	
Cruise Control With Lane Centering/	
Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and	
Go.....	299
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Indicators.....	304
Adaptive Cruise Control	
Limitations.....	296
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions -	
Battery Electric Vehicle.....	295
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions -	
Diesel/Gasoline.....	294
Adaptive Cruise Control –	
Troubleshooting.....	310
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information	
Messages.....	310
AdBlue® Capacity and	
Specification.....	208
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	114
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	428
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting	
Brightness.....	108
Adjusting the Map.....	499
Changing the Format of the Map.....	499
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	499
Adjusting the Seatbelts During	
Pregnancy.....	55
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	485
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	89

Index

Adjusting the Volume.....	484	What Are the Interior Sensors.....	85
Aid Mode.....	319	What Is the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	85
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	319	What Is the Battery Backup Alarm.....	86
What Is Aid Mode.....	319	Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	86
Airbag Precautions.....	59	Setting the Alarm Security Level.....	86
Airbags.....	58	Switching Ask on Exit On and Off.....	87
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	61	What are the Alarm Security Levels.....	86
Airbags – Troubleshooting.....	61	What Is Ask on Exit.....	86
Airbags – Audible Warnings.....	61	Appendices.....	545
Airbags – Warning Lamps.....	61	Applying the Electric Parking	
Air Conditioning		Brake.....	267
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch		Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an	
Center Display Screen/Automatic		Emergency.....	267
Temperature Control.....	143	Applying the Parking Brake.....	265
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch		App Precautions.....	497
Center Display Screen, Vehicles Without:		App Requirements.....	497
Air Conditioning.....	131	Apps.....	497
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch		Audio System.....	484
Center Display Screen/Automatic		Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	486
Temperature Control.....	134	FM Radio.....	485
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch		Audio System Precautions.....	484
Center Display Screen/Manual		Authorized Dealer Directory.....	506
Temperature Control.....	139	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	113
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	
Specification - Battery Electric		Limitations.....	113
Vehicle.....	442	Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		Precautions.....	113
Specification - Diesel.....	441	What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior	
Air Conditioning System Capacity and		Mirror.....	113
Specification - Gasoline.....	440	Auto Hold.....	276
Alarm		Auto Hold Indicators.....	276
See: Connecting a Trailer.....	361	Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	377
Alert and Aid Mode.....	320	Automatic Crash Shutoff	
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	320	Precautions.....	377
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	320	Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	377
Alexa Built-In.....	491	What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	377
Alexa Built-In Requirements.....	491	Automatic Emergency Braking.....	342
Alexa Built-In Settings.....	491	Switching Automatic Emergency Braking	
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	261	On and Off.....	342
Anti-Lock Braking System		What Is Automatic Emergency	
Limitations.....	261	Braking.....	342
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	85	Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With:	
Arming the Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	86	Push Button Start.....	178
Disarming the Anti-Theft Alarm		How Does Automatic Engine Stop	
System.....	86	Work.....	178
How Does the Anti-Theft Alarm System		Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	178
Work.....	85	Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and	
What Are the Inclination Sensors.....	85	Off.....	178

Index

Automatic High Beam Control.....	103	Auto-Start-Stop Audible Warning.....	188
Automatic High Beam Control		Auto-Start-Stop.....	187
Indicators.....	104	Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	188
Automatic High Beam Control –		Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	188
Information Messages.....	105	Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	187
Automatic High Beam Control		Auto-Start-Stop –	
Limitations.....	104	Troubleshooting.....	188
Automatic High Beam Control		Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked	
Precautions.....	103	Questions.....	189
Automatic High Beam Control		Auto-Start-Stop – Information	
Requirements.....	104	Messages.....	188
How Does Automatic High Beam Control		Autounlock.....	75
Work.....	103	Autounlock Requirements.....	75
Overriding Automatic High Beam		Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	75
Control.....	105	What Is Autounlock.....	75
Switching Automatic High Beam Control		Autowipers.....	92
On and Off.....	104	Adjusting the Sensitivity of the Rain	
Automatic Transmission Audible		Sensor.....	93
Warnings.....	250	Autowipers Settings.....	92
Automatic Transmission.....	248	What Are Autowipers.....	92
Automatic Transmission Positions.....	248		
Automatic Transmission –		B	
Troubleshooting.....	252	Battery Charge - Battery Electric	
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity		Vehicle.....	123
and Specification - Diesel/		Battery Performance and Durability	
Gasoline.....	251	Information - Battery Electric	
Automatic Transmission Position		Vehicle.....	513
Indicators.....	249	Beginning a Voice Interaction.....	490
Automatic Transmission		Blind Spot Assist.....	321
Positions.....	248	Blind Spot Assist Indicators.....	322
Drive (D).....	249	Blind Spot Assist – Information	
Low (L).....	249	Messages.....	323
Neutral (N).....	249	Blind Spot Assist Limitations.....	321
Park (P).....	248	How Does Blind Spot Assist Work.....	321
Reverse (R).....	249	What Is Blind Spot Assist.....	321
Automatic Transmission		Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Precautions.....	248	Coverage.....	323
Automatic Transmission Shift		Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	
Indicators.....	249	Indicators.....	324
Automatic Transmission –		Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage –	
Troubleshooting.....	252	Information Messages.....	325
Automatic Transmission – Information		Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage	
Messages.....	252	Limitations.....	323
Auto Mode.....	136	How Does Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Auto Mode Indicators.....	136	Coverage Work.....	323
Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	136	What Is Blind Spot Assist with Trailer	
Autorelock.....	76	Coverage.....	323
How Does Autorelock Work.....	76		

Index

Blind Spot Information System.....	327	Bottle Holders.....	169
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	331	Bottle Holder Precautions.....	169
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	329	Locating the Bottle Holders.....	169
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	331	Brake Coach - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	123
Blind Spot Information System Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	328	Brake Fluid Specification.....	262
Blind Spot Information System Limitations - Diesel/Gasoline.....	327	Brake Over Accelerator - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	261
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	327	Brake Over Accelerator - Diesel/ Gasoline.....	261
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	328	Brake Precautions.....	261
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Diesel/Gasoline, Automatic Transmission.....	328	Brakes.....	261
Blind Spot Information System Requirements - Diesel/Gasoline, Manual Transmission.....	328	Anti-Lock Braking System.....	261
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	331	Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	263
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	331	Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	263
Blind Spot Information System – Warning Lamps.....	331	Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	264
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage.....	329	Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	263
Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Limitations.....	330	Breaking-In - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	368
How Does Blind Spot Information System With Trailer Coverage Work.....	329	Breaking-In - Diesel/Gasoline.....	368
Selecting a Trailer.....	330		
Setting a Trailer Length.....	330	C	
What Is Blind Spot Information System with Trailer Coverage.....	329	Canceling the Set Speed.....	293
Bluetooth®.....	496	Canceling the Set Speed Limit.....	313
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	398	Catalytic Converter.....	212
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	398	Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	212
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	399	Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	212
Bonnet Lock		Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	212
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	404	Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	212
Booster Seats.....	51	Center Display Limitations.....	488
		Center Display Overview.....	488
		Center Display Precautions.....	488
		Changing a Flat Tire.....	471
		Changing a Road Wheel.....	471
		Changing the Backup Battery.....	65
		Changing the Language.....	124
		Changing the Measurement Unit.....	124
		Changing the Remote Control Battery – Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	67
		Changing the Remote Control Battery – Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	68
		Changing the Set Speed Limit.....	313
		Changing the Temperature Unit.....	124

Index

Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	124	Installing Child Restraints.....	50
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	482	Child Safety.....	40
Charge Coupler Manual Release - MI Kombi/N1 Kombi.....	237	Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	41
Charge Coupler Manual Release - N1 Kombi Van/Van.....	238	Child Restraints.....	44
Charge Port Indicators.....	226	Child Safety Locks.....	52
Charging a Device.....	162	Child Safety Precautions.....	40
Charging a Wireless Device.....	168	Cleaning the Exterior.....	443
Charging Equipment Identification Symbols.....	242	Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	444
Charging Equipment Indicators.....	222	Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	443
Charging Equipment Overview.....	219	Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	443
Charging Equipment Precautions.....	218	Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	444
Charging Settings.....	238	Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	444
Charging Your Vehicle.....	218	Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	443
AC Charging.....	227	Cleaning the Underbody.....	445
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	244	Cleaning Wheels.....	444
Charging Your Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	244	Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	443
Charging Your Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	245	Cleaning the Interior.....	445
Charging Your Vehicle – Information Messages.....	244	Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	446
Charging Your Vehicle – Warning Lamps.....	244	Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	445
Checking Local Hazard Information Status.....	312	Cleaning Fabric.....	445
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	261	Cleaning Leather.....	446
Checking the Clutch Fluid Level.....	246	Cleaning Plastic.....	445
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Level.....	208	Cleaning Seatbelts.....	447
Checking the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Status.....	208	Cleaning Storage Compartments.....	447
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	458	Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	445
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	94	Cleaning Vinyl.....	446
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	41	Climate Control.....	131
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	41	Auto Mode.....	136
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	42	Climate Control Hints - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	146
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	41	Climate Control Hints.....	132
Child Restraints.....	44	Closing the Frunk - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	356
Child Restraint Position Information.....	44	Closing the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle.....	356
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	49	Closing the Liftgate.....	84
		Closing the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	84
		Closing the Sliding Door.....	79
		Closing the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle.....	79
		Closing the Sliding Door From Outside Your Vehicle.....	79

Index

Clutch Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	247
Cold Weather Precautions.....	368
Configuring the Trip Computer.....	126
Connected Navigation.....	499
Connected Vehicle.....	479
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	480
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	479
Connected Vehicle Data.....	29
Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	479
Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	479
Connected Vehicle Settings.....	480
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	480
Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	480
Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	496
Connecting a Trailer.....	361
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	362
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	362
Connecting a Trailer – Information Messages.....	362
Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	479
Connecting the Ford App to the Modem.....	479
Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	479
What Is the Modem.....	479
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	480
Connecting Your Phone.....	493
Converting or Modifying Your Vehicle.....	544
Coolant - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	418
Adding Coolant.....	418
Changing the Coolant.....	419
Checking the Coolant Level.....	418
Coolant – Information Messages.....	421
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	421
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	420
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	420
Coolant - Diesel/Gasoline.....	414
Adding Coolant.....	415
Changing the Coolant.....	416
Checking the Coolant Level.....	414
Coolant – Information Messages.....	417
Coolant Precautions.....	414
Coolant – Warning Lamps.....	417
Cooling System Capacity and Specification.....	417
Managing the Coolant Temperature.....	416
Crash and Breakdown Information.....	372
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	377
Fail-Safe Cooling.....	380
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	373
Post-Crash Alert System.....	376
Recovery Towing.....	377
Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	482
Cross Traffic Alert.....	334
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	337
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	337
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	336
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	335
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	337
Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	337
Cruise Control.....	292
Cruise Control Indicators.....	293
Cup Holders.....	169
Cup Holder Precautions.....	169
Locating the Cup Holders.....	169
Customer Information.....	513
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display – Battery Electric Vehicle.....	122
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display – Diesel/Gasoline.....	121
D	
Data Privacy.....	27
DC Charging.....	234
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	202
Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	203
Diesel Particulate Filter Precautions.....	202
Diesel Particulate Filter Requirements.....	203

Index

Diesel Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	203
Diesel Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	204
Diesel Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	203
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	486
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Limitations.....	486
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio Station.....	486
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	486
Directing the Flow of Air.....	132
Distance Indication - Diesel/Gasoline.....	341
Distance Indication Indicator.....	342
Switching Distance Indication On and Off.....	342
What Is Distance Indication.....	341
Door Lock Indicators.....	76
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	76
Doors and Locks.....	72
Autorelock.....	76
Autounlock.....	75
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	76
Mislock.....	75
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	74
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	72
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	76
Doors and Locks – Information Messages.....	77
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	76
Drive Mode Control.....	259
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	259
Drive Modes.....	259
Drive Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	259
Drive Mode Control – Information Messages.....	259
Drive Modes.....	259
Eco.....	259
Normal.....	259
Slippery.....	259
Sport.....	259
Driver Alert.....	345
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	347
Driver Alert Indicators.....	347
Driver Alert Precautions.....	346
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	347
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	347
Driving Economically - Diesel/Gasoline.....	368
Driving Hints.....	368
Electric Vehicle.....	370
Driving on Snow and Ice.....	368
Driving Through Shallow Water - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	369
Driving Through Shallow Water - Diesel/Gasoline.....	369
Drowsiness Monitor	
See: Driver Alert.....	345
E	
eCall.....	63
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	65
eCall – Troubleshooting.....	65
eCall – Information Messages.....	65
eCall User Information.....	516
Electric Economy - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	122
Electric Motor Audible Warnings.....	255
Electric Motor.....	253
Electric Motor – Troubleshooting.....	257
Roll-Away Protection.....	255
Selector Positions.....	253
Electric Motor Precautions.....	253
Electric Motor Temperature Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	119
Electric Motor – Troubleshooting.....	257
Electric Motor – Information Messages.....	257
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	268
Electric Parking Brake.....	267
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	268
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	268
Electric Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	269

Index

Electric Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	268	Exit Warning.....	332
Electric Power Steering.....	279	Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	333
Electric Power Steering Adaptive Steering.....	279	Exit Warning Indicators.....	333
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	279	Exit Warning Limitations.....	332
How Does Electric Power Steering Work.....	279	Exit Warning Precautions.....	332
Electric Vehicle.....	370	Exit Warning – Troubleshooting.....	333
Maximizing Your Driving Range.....	370	Exit Warning – Information Messages.....	333
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	545	Exterior Bulbs.....	429
Emergency Call Indicators.....	64	Changing a License Plate Lamp Bulb.....	432
Emergency Call Limitations.....	63	Changing an Entry Lamp Bulb.....	431
Emergency Call Requirements.....	63	Changing a Reversing Lamp Bulb.....	431
Emergency Call System Data.....	30	Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	429
Emergency Equipment.....	385	Removing a Rear Lamp Assembly.....	431
Emergency Towing.....	382	Exterior Lamps.....	101
Enabling Apps on an Android Device.....	497	Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	102
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	497	Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	102
Enabling Local Hazard Information.....	312	Switching the Parking Lamps On and Off.....	101
Enabling Remote Start.....	129	Using the Front Fog Lamps.....	102
End User License Agreement.....	519	Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....	102
Energy Consumption Figures.....	217	Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	101
Energy Consumption Regulations.....	216	Exterior Lighting Control - Vehicles Built From: 08/2026.....	99
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge - Diesel/Gasoline.....	119	Exterior Lighting Control - Vehicles Built Up To: 08/2026.....	99
Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	414	Exterior Lighting.....	99
Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline.....	413	Automatic High Beam Control.....	103
Engine Oil.....	411	Exterior Lamps.....	101
Adding Engine Oil.....	411	Headlamps.....	100
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	411	Exterior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	105
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification.....	412	Exterior Mirrors.....	114
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	411	Exterior Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	38
Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	412	Exterior Overview - Diesel/Gasoline.....	37
Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	412		
Engine Specifications - Diesel.....	437	F	
Engine Specifications - Gasoline.....	436	Fail-Safe Cooling.....	380
Environment.....	31	Driving When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated.....	380
Evasive Steering Assist.....	343	Fail-Safe Cooling Indicators.....	381
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	343	How Does Fail-Safe Cooling Work.....	380
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	343	What Is Fail-Safe Cooling.....	380
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	343		
Event Data.....	28		

Index

Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Diesel.....	414
See: Engine Cooling Fan - Gasoline.....	413
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	
- Vehicles With: Rear Center Seat Head	
Restraint.....	54
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	
- Vehicles Without: Rear Center Seat	
Head Restraint.....	53
Feature Bar - Vehicles With: 8 Inch	
Center Display Screen.....	489
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction	
System Tank.....	206
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction	
System Tank in Cold Weather.....	206
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction	
System Tank Using a Fuel Station	
Pump.....	206
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction	
System Tank Using a Portable	
Container.....	207
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	471
Floor Mats.....	370
FM Radio.....	485
FM Radio Limitations.....	485
Selecting an FM Radio Station.....	485
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles	
With: Auto Fold Exterior Mirrors.....	114
Folding the Exterior Mirrors - Vehicles	
With: Manual Fold Exterior	
Mirrors.....	115
Forward Collision Warning.....	342
Adjusting the Sensitivity of Forward	
Collision Warning.....	342
What is Forward Collision Warning.....	342
Front Parking Aid.....	283
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	284
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	284
Locating the Front Parking Aid	
Sensors.....	284
What is the Front Parking Aid.....	283
Front Seat Precautions.....	149
Front Seats.....	149
Heated Seats.....	154
Manual Seats.....	150
Fuel and Refueling Audible	
Warnings.....	201
Fuel and Refueling.....	193
Fuel and Refueling -	
Troubleshooting.....	201
Fuel Quality.....	194
Refueling.....	196
Running Out of Fuel.....	194
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	193
Fuel and Refueling -	
Troubleshooting.....	201
Fuel and Refueling - Information	
Messages.....	201
Fuel and Refueling - Warning Lamps.....	201
Fuel Consumption Figures -	
Diesel.....	200
Fuel Consumption Figures -	
Gasoline.....	199
Fuel Consumption Regulations.....	199
Fuel Economy Display - Diesel/	
Gasoline.....	122
Fuel Filter Service Indicator Check -	
Diesel.....	435
Fuel Gauge - Diesel/Gasoline.....	118
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	118
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	118
What Is Distance to Empty.....	118
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	118
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	118
Fuel Quality.....	194
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	194
Fuel Tank Capacity - Diesel.....	198
Fuel Tank Capacity - Gasoline.....	197
Fuse Precautions.....	386
Fuses.....	386
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	398
Fuses - Troubleshooting.....	403
High Current Fuse Box.....	402
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	386
Fuses - Troubleshooting.....	403
Fuses - Frequently Asked Questions.....	403
G	
Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	213
Gasoline Particulate Filter -	
Troubleshooting.....	214
Gasoline Particulate Filter	
Precautions.....	213

Index

Gasoline Particulate Filter Requirements.....	213
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Troubleshooting.....	214
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Information Messages.....	214
Gasoline Particulate Filter – Warning Lamps.....	214
Global Opening and Closing.....	110
Switching Global Closing On and Off.....	111
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	111
Using Global Closing.....	111
Using Global Opening.....	110
What Is Global Opening and Closing.....	110
Glossary of Tire Terminology.....	454
H	
Headlamp Adjusting See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	428
Headlamps.....	100
Adjusting the Level of the Headlamps.....	100
Headlamp Indicators.....	101
Switching Headlamp Exit Delay On and Off.....	100
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road.....	100
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	100
Heated Seats.....	154
Heated Seat Precautions.....	154
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	154
Heated Steering Wheel.....	90
Heating See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	143
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning.....	131
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	134
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Manual Temperature Control.....	139
High Current Fuse Box.....	402
Accessing the High Current Fuse Box.....	402
Identifying the Fuses in the High Current Fuse Box.....	402
Locating the High Current Fuse Box.....	402
High Voltage Battery.....	215
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	217
High Voltage Battery Precautions.....	215
High Voltage Battery Temperature Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	119
High Voltage Battery – Troubleshooting.....	217
High Voltage Battery – Information Messages.....	217
High Voltage Battery – Warning Lamps.....	217
High Voltage Battery Vehicle Precautions - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	372
Hill Start Assist.....	275
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	275
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	275
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	275
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	275
Hood Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	404
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go Work.....	294
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	294
How Does Auto Hold Work.....	276
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	327
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	334
How Does Driver Alert Work - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	345
How Does Driver Alert Work - Diesel/Gasoline.....	345
How Does eCall Work.....	63
How Does Exit Warning Work.....	332
How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	275
How Does Pre-Collision Assist with Intersection Assist Work.....	339

Index

How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	339
How Does Reverse Brake Assist Work.....	271
How Does Stability Control Work.....	278
How Does the 180 Degree Camera Work.....	291
How Does the Center Mounted Side Airbag Work.....	59
How Does the Diesel Particulate Filter Work.....	202
How Does the Gasoline Particulate Filter Work.....	213
How Does the Intelligent Speed Limiter Work.....	315
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	318
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	159
How Does the Speed Limiter Work.....	313
How Does Traction Control Work.....	277
How Does Traffic Sign Recognition Work.....	348
How Does Wrong Way Alert Work.....	351
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	58
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	58
How Do the Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	59
I	
Icon Glossary See: Symbols Glossary.....	23
Icons See: Symbols Glossary.....	23
Identifying Fuse Types.....	403
Ignition Switch - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	171
Inflating the Tires.....	458
Information On Demand Screen.....	489
Information on the Tire Sidewall.....	451
Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	461
Installing and Removing the Bulkhead.....	359
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cargo Net - Bus.....	357
Installing and Removing the Luggage Compartment Cover - Bus.....	357
Instrument Cluster Display.....	120
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	121
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu - Diesel/Gasoline.....	120
Instrument Cluster.....	116
Fuel Gauge - Diesel/Gasoline.....	118
Instrument Cluster Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	117
Instrument Cluster Overview - Diesel/Gasoline.....	116
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control.....	309
How Does Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	309
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Alerts.....	310
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	310
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	310
Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	310
Switching Intelligent Mode On and Off.....	310
Intelligent Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	317
Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicators.....	316
Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	315
Intelligent Speed Limiter - Troubleshooting.....	317
Intelligent Speed Limiter Precautions.....	315
Intelligent Speed Limiter - Troubleshooting.....	317
Intelligent Speed Limiter - Frequently Asked Questions.....	317
Intentionally Exceeding the Set Speed Limit.....	314
Interior Air Quality.....	148
Interior Bulbs.....	433
Changing a Front Interior Lamp Bulb.....	434
Changing a Map Reading Lamp Bulb.....	434
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	433
Interior Lamp Function.....	108
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	108

Index

What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	108
Interior Lighting.....	107
Interior Lamp Function.....	108
Interior Mirror.....	113
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	113
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	113
Interior Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, LHD.....	34
Interior Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, RHD.....	36
Interior Overview - Diesel/Gasoline, LHD.....	32
Interior Overview - Diesel/Gasoline, RHD.....	33
Introduction.....	19

J

Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	373
Jump Starting Precautions.....	373
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	375
Preparing the Vehicle.....	375

K

Keyless Entry.....	80
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	81
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	80
Keyless Entry Settings.....	80
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	81
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	81
Keys and Remote Controls.....	66
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	70
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	70
Keys and Remote Controls – Frequently Asked Questions.....	71
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	70

L

Lane Centering.....	304
How Does Lane Centering Work.....	304
Lane Centering Alerts.....	306

Lane Centering Automatic Cancellation.....	306
Lane Centering Indicators.....	307
Lane Centering Limitations.....	305
Lane Centering Manual Cancellation.....	307
Lane Centering Precautions.....	305
Lane Centering Requirements.....	305
Switching Lane Centering On and Off.....	306
Lane Centering – Troubleshooting.....	307
Lane Centering – Information Messages.....	307
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	320
Lane Keeping System.....	318
Aid Mode.....	319
Alert and Aid Mode.....	320
Blind Spot Assist.....	321
Blind Spot Assist with Trailer Coverage.....	323
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	326
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	318
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	318
Lane Keeping System Settings.....	319
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	326
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	326
Liftgate.....	83
Closing the Liftgate.....	84
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	84
Opening the Liftgate.....	83
Liftgate Precautions.....	83
Liftgate – Troubleshooting.....	84
Liftgate – Information Messages.....	84
Liftgate – Warning Lamps.....	84
Load Carrying.....	353
Roof Rack.....	353
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....	354
Load Carrying Precautions.....	353
Loading Your Trailer.....	365
Local Hazard Information Indicators.....	312
Local Hazard Information.....	312
Local Hazard Information Precautions.....	312
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	329

Index

Locating the Cabin Air Filter.....	148	Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	494
Locating the Charge Port.....	225	Manually Dimming the Interior Mirror.....	113
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	336	Manually Making an Emergency Call.....	63
Locating the Exit Warning Sensors.....	333	Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	268
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	194	Manual Seats.....	150
Locating the Power Outlets.....	164	Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	150
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	341	Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	152
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors - Vehicles Without: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	340	Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	151
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	287	Adjusting the Seat Height.....	152
Locating the Tire label.....	451	Folding the Passenger Seat.....	152
Locating the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	463	Folding the Seats.....	157
Locating the USB Ports.....	162	Head Restraint Components.....	150
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	167	Installing the Head Restraint.....	151
Locating Your Vehicle.....	67	Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	151
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	112	Removing the Head Restraint.....	151
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	89	Unfolding the Passenger Seat.....	153
Locking the Steering Wheel - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	90	Unfolding the Seats.....	158
Luggage Compartment.....	356	Manual Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	246
Closing the Frunk - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	356	Manual Transmission.....	246
Opening the Frunk - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	356	Manual Transmission - Troubleshooting.....	247
Luggage Compartment Precautions.....	356	Manual Transmission Precautions.....	246
M		Manual Transmission Shift Indicators.....	246
Maintenance.....	404	Manual Transmission - Troubleshooting.....	247
12V Battery.....	422	Manual Transmission - Frequently Asked Questions.....	247
12V Battery - Troubleshooting - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	427	Media Control Buttons.....	484
12V Battery - Troubleshooting - Diesel/ Gasoline.....	425	Mislock.....	75
Coolant - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	418	How Does Mislock Work.....	75
Coolant - Diesel/Gasoline.....	414	Mislock Limitations.....	75
Engine Oil.....	411	Switching Mislock On and Off.....	76
Exterior Bulbs.....	429	What Is Mislock.....	75
Interior Bulbs.....	433	Mobile Communications Equipment.....	515
Maintenance Precautions.....	404	Mobile Device Data.....	29
		Muting the Audio.....	485
		N	
		Navigation Map Updates.....	499

Index

Navigation.....	499
Adjusting the Map.....	499
Route Guidance.....	500
Setting a Destination.....	499
Waypoints.....	500

O

One Pedal Drive Indicators.....	260
One Pedal Drive Limitations.....	260
One Pedal Drive.....	260
One Pedal Drive Precautions.....	260
Opening and Closing the Flip Key - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	66
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	404
Opening and Closing the Rear Windows.....	112
Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open and Close Front Windows.....	109
Opening and Closing the Windows - Vehicles With: One-Touch Open Driver Window.....	109
Opening the Frunk - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	356
Opening the Frunk from Outside Your Vehicle.....	356
Opening the Liftgate.....	83
Opening the Liftgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	83
Opening the Liftgate Using the Remote Control.....	83
Opening the Sliding Door.....	78
Opening the Sliding Door From Inside Your Vehicle.....	78
Opening the Sliding Door From Outside Your Vehicle.....	78
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	74
Opening the Rear Doors From Inside Your Vehicle in an Emergency.....	74
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	74
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	72
Opening and Closing the Doors.....	73
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Key Blade.....	72

Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	72
OTA See: Software Update Settings.....	503
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	502
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	502
Overhead Storage.....	170
Locating the Overhead Storage.....	170
Overhead Storage Load Capacities.....	170
Overriding Reverse Brake Assist.....	272
Overriding the Set Speed.....	304
Over the air See: Software Update Settings.....	503
Over-the-air See: Software Update Settings.....	503
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	502
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	502
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	502
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	502

P

Parking Aid Indicators.....	285
Parking Aid Precautions.....	282
Parking Aids.....	282
Front Parking Aid.....	283
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	285
Rear Parking Aid.....	283
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	285
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	285
Parking Brake Audible Warning.....	265
Parking Brake.....	265
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	265
Parking Brake – Troubleshooting.....	265
Parking Brake – Information Messages.....	265
Parking Brake – Warning Lamps.....	265
Passenger Airbag Indicators.....	60
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	85
Arming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	85

Index

Disarming the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	85
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	85
Pedestrian Alert System.....	62
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting.....	62
Pedestrian Alert System – Troubleshooting.....	62
Pedestrian Alert System – Information Messages.....	62
Performing a System Reset.....	505
Personalized Settings.....	124
Phone Menu.....	493
Phone.....	493
Phone Precautions.....	493
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	496
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	162
Post-Collision Braking.....	376
Post-Crash Alert System.....	376
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....	376
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....	376
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	376
Power Gauge - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	118
Powering Off.....	184
Power Outlet Indicators.....	164
Power Outlet Limitations.....	164
Power Outlet.....	164
Power Outlet Precautions.....	164
Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	503
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	502
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	502
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	340
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	340
Pre-Collision Assist.....	339
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	342
Distance Indication - Diesel/Gasoline.....	341
Evasive Steering Assist.....	343
Forward Collision Warning.....	342
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	343
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	343
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	344
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....	343
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	449
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage - Diesel/Gasoline.....	448
Preserving Your High Voltage Battery.....	215
Programming the Remote Control.....	69
Protecting the Environment.....	31
Puncture	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	471
Push Button Ignition Switch - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	172
R	
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	514
REACH.....	514
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	358
Locating the Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	358
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Load Capacities.....	359
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Precautions.....	358
Rear Cargo Area.....	358
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	358
Rear Loadspace Hatch.....	353
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	161
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....	160
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	159
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	159
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	159
Rear Occupant Alert System Settings.....	160
Rear Parking Aid.....	283
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....	283

Index

Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	283	Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	447
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	283	Replacement Parts	
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	283	Recommendation.....	515
Rear Seat Precautions.....	156	Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Rear Seats.....	156	Control.....	69
Manual Seats.....	156	Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	148
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	288	Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	94
Rear View Camera Limitations.....	287	Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	95
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	287	Reprogramming the Unlocking	
Rear View Camera.....	287	Function.....	74
Rear View Camera Settings.....	289	Resetting the Individual Trip	
Rear View Camera Settings.....	289	Values.....	126
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and		Resetting the Trip Computer.....	125
Off.....	289	Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring	
Switching Rear View Camera Object		System - Battery Electric	
Distance Indicator On and Off.....	289	Vehicle.....	468
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and		Resetting Tire Pressure Monitoring	
Out.....	289	System - Diesel/Gasoline.....	467
Rebooting the Center Display.....	489	Restarting the Engine.....	187
Recovery Towing.....	377	Restarting the Vehicle After Powering	
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	377	Off.....	184
Accessing the Rear Towing Point.....	378	Resuming the Set Speed Limit.....	313
Installing the Towing Eye.....	378	Resuming the Set Speed.....	293
Locating the Towing Eye.....	378	Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With:	
Recycling and Disposing Labels.....	31	Adaptive Cruise Control.....	302
Recycling and Disposing of		Resuming the Set Speed - Vehicles With:	
Batteries.....	31	Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane	
Recycling and Disposing of the High		Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control	
Voltage Battery.....	216	With Stop and Go.....	302
Refueling.....	196	Reverse Brake Assist Indicators.....	272
Refueling System Overview.....	196	Reverse Brake Assist Precautions.....	271
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	196	Reverse Brake Assist.....	271
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if		Reverse Brake Assist -	
the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of		Troubleshooting.....	273
Charge.....	268	Reverse Brake Assist -	
Releasing the Parking Brake.....	265	Troubleshooting.....	273
Remote Control Limitations.....	66	Reverse Brake Assist - Frequently Asked	
Remote Start.....	128	Questions.....	274
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles With:		Reverse Brake Assist - Information	
Heated Steering Wheel.....	130	Messages.....	273
Remote Start Settings - Vehicles		Reverse Wipe.....	94
Without: Heated Steering Wheel.....	129	Reverse Wipe Settings.....	94
Removing the Key Blade - Vehicles With:		What Is Reverse Wipe.....	94
Push Button Start.....	66	Roll-Away Protection.....	255
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage -		How Does Roll-Away Protection	
Battery Electric Vehicle.....	450	Work.....	255
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage -		Roll-Away Protection Limitations.....	255
Diesel/Gasoline.....	450		

Index

Switching the Roll-Away Protection On and Off.....	255
Rollover Warning.....	513
Roof Rack.....	353
Removing and Installing Roof Rack Crossbars.....	354
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	354
Roof Rack Precautions.....	353
Route Guidance.....	500
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	500
Canceling Route Guidance.....	500
Repeating an Instruction.....	500
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	368
See: Breaking-In - Diesel/Gasoline.....	368
Running Out of Fuel.....	194
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	195
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	194
S	
Scrolling Through Menu Items.....	485
Seatbelt Precautions - Vehicles With:	
Rear Center Seat Head Restraint.....	53
Seatbelt Precautions - Vehicles Without:	
Rear Center Seat Head Restraint.....	53
Seatbelt Reminder.....	56
Checking Seatbelt Status.....	56
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	56
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	56
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	56
Seatbelts.....	53
Seatbelt Reminder.....	56
Seatbelts - Troubleshooting.....	57
Seatbelts - Troubleshooting.....	57
Seatbelts - Information Messages.....	57
Security.....	85
Anti-Theft Alarm System.....	85
Anti-Theft Alarm System Settings.....	86
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	85
Security - Troubleshooting.....	87
Security - Troubleshooting.....	87
Security - Frequently Asked Questions.....	88
Security - Information Messages.....	87
Selecting a Drive Mode.....	259
Selecting a Menu Item.....	485
Selecting the Audio Source.....	484
Selective Catalytic Reduction Fluid Consumption.....	208
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Guidelines.....	205
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Precautions.....	205
Selective Catalytic Reduction System Requirements.....	205
Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....	205
Filling the Selective Catalytic Reduction System Tank.....	206
Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Troubleshooting.....	209
Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Troubleshooting.....	209
Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Frequently Asked Questions.....	211
Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Information Messages.....	209
Selective Catalytic Reduction System - Warning Lamps.....	209
Selector Position Indicators.....	254
Selector Positions.....	253
Drive (D).....	254
Low (L).....	254
Neutral (N).....	253
Park (P).....	253
Reverse (R).....	253
Service Data.....	28
Service Intervals.....	512
Setting a Destination.....	499
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	500
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	500
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	500
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	500
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	499
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	499

Index

Setting a Memory Preset.....	485
Settings Data.....	29
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap.....	301
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	299
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	300
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	131
Setting the Clock and Date.....	485
Setting the Cruise Control Speed.....	292
Setting the Speed Limit.....	313
Setting the Temperature.....	132
Setting the Wake Word.....	490
Shifting Into Reverse.....	246
Shifting Your Immobile Vehicle Out of Park (P).....	250
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	254
Signing In to Your Account.....	491
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	149
Sliding Door Precautions.....	78
Sliding Door.....	78
Closing the Sliding Door.....	79
Opening the Sliding Door.....	78
Software Update Indicators.....	504
Software Update Settings.....	503
Software Update See: Software Update Settings.....	503
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	502
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	502
Special Notices - Turkey.....	21
Speed Control See: Cruise Control.....	292
Speed Limiter Audible Warnings.....	314
Speed Limiter Indicators.....	314
Speed Limiter Precautions.....	313
Speed Limiter.....	313
Speedometer.....	118
Stability Control Indicator.....	278
Stability Control.....	278
Starter Switch See: Ignition Switch - Vehicles With: Keyed Ignition.....	171
Starting and Powering Off Precautions.....	184
Starting and Powering Off.....	184
Starting and Powering Off - Troubleshooting.....	186
Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	185
Starting and Powering Off - Troubleshooting.....	186
Starting and Powering Off - Frequently Asked Questions.....	186
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Precautions.....	171
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	171
Automatic Engine Stop - Vehicles With: Push Button Start.....	178
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Troubleshooting.....	179
Starting the Engine.....	172
Stopping the Engine.....	175
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Troubleshooting.....	179
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Frequently Asked Questions.....	180
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Information Messages.....	179
Starting and Stopping the Engine - Warning Lamps.....	179
Starting the Engine.....	172
Restarting the Engine After Stopping It.....	174
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	173
Starting a Flooded Engine.....	174
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	172
Starting the Vehicle.....	184
Status Bar.....	488
Steering.....	279
Electric Power Steering.....	279
Steering - Troubleshooting.....	280
Steering - Troubleshooting.....	280
Steering - Frequently Asked Questions.....	281
Steering - Information Messages.....	280
Steering - Warning Lamps.....	280
Steering Wheel.....	89

Index

Stopping the Engine.....	187	Switching Cruise Control On and Off.....	292
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	176	Switching Defrost On and Off.....	131
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	175	Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	347
Storage.....	169	Switching Exit Warning On and Off.....	333
Bottle Holders.....	169	Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	304
Cup Holders.....	169	Switching From Intelligent Speed Limiter to Speed Limiter.....	317
Overhead Storage.....	170	Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off.....	275
Storing a First Aid Kit - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	385	Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	135
Storing a First Aid Kit - Diesel/Gasoline.....	385	Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	134
Storing a Warning Triangle - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	385	Switching One Pedal Drive On and Off.....	260
Storing a Warning Triangle - Diesel/Gasoline.....	385	Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	282
Storing Your Vehicle.....	448	Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	131
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control.....	298	Switching Reverse Brake Assist On and Off.....	272
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off - Vehicles With: Adaptive Cruise Control With Lane Centering/ Adaptive Cruise Control With Stop and Go.....	298	Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	278
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	134	Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	495
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Vehicles With: Front Interior Lamp.....	107	Switching the 180 Degree Camera On and Off.....	291
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off - Vehicles With: Front Interior Lamp With Map Reading Lamps.....	107	Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	484
Switching Android Auto™ On and Off.....	498	Switching the Display On and Off.....	486
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	497	Switching the Electric Heater On and Off - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	144
Switching Auto Hold On and Off.....	276	Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	107
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	187	Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	373
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	329	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles With: Heated Rear Window.....	132
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	131	Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off - Vehicles Without: Heated Rear Window.....	132
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	336	Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	131

Index

Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off - Vehicles Built From: 12/ 2024.....	144
Switching the Heated Windshield On and Off.....	131
Switching the Intelligent Speed Limiter On and Off.....	315
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	319
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	319
Switching the Passenger Airbag On and Off.....	61
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	107
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	94
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off - Diesel/Gasoline.....	94
Switching the Speed Limiter On and Off.....	313
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	277
Switching Wrong Way Alert On and Off.....	351
Symbols Glossary.....	23
Symbols Used On Your Instrument Cluster.....	23
System Update	
See: Software Update Settings.....	503
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	502
See: Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	502
T	
Tachometer - Diesel/Gasoline.....	117
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	513
Tire Care.....	458
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	467
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	467
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	467
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	468
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	468
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	470
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	468
Tire Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	460
Tire Pressure Specifications - Diesel/Gasoline.....	458
Tire Replacement Requirements.....	455
Tire Rotation.....	461
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Components.....	463
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit Precautions.....	463
Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	463
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier.....	354
Tow Bar Mounted Carrier Precautions.....	354
Tow Bar Mounted Load Capacities.....	355
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	364
Towing a Trailer Limitations - Diesel/Gasoline.....	364
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	363
Towing a Trailer.....	363
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	365
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	365
Tow Bar Dimensions.....	366
Towing Weight Capacities.....	365
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	382
Towing Your Vehicle.....	382
Traction Control Indicator.....	277
Traction Control.....	277
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	277
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	277
Traction Control – Information Messages.....	277
Traction Control – Warning Lamps.....	277
Traffic Sign Recognition Indicators.....	349
Traffic Sign Recognition Limitations.....	348
Traffic Sign Recognition Precautions.....	348
Traffic Sign Recognition Settings.....	350

Index

Traffic Sign Recognition.....	348
Trailer Towing Hints.....	365
Trailer Towing Navigation.....	501
Transporting the Vehicle.....	379
Trip Computer.....	125
Trip Data.....	125
Trip Summary - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	123
Tyre Pressure Specifications	
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	460
See: Tyre Pressure Specifications - Diesel/Gasoline.....	458

U

Under Hood Fuse Box.....	386
Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	386
Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	387
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, LHD.....	409
Under Hood Overview - Battery Electric Vehicle, RHD.....	410
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, LHD.....	407
Under Hood Overview - Diesel, RHD.....	408
Under Hood Overview - Gasoline, LHD.....	405
Under Hood Overview - Gasoline, RHD.....	406
USB Ports.....	162
Using Alexa Built-In.....	491
Using Auto Hold.....	276
Using Keyless Entry.....	80
Using Remote Start - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	128
Using Remote Start - Diesel/Gasoline.....	128
Using Snow Chains - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	457
Using Snow Chains - Diesel/Gasoline.....	456
Using Summer Tires.....	456
Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....	120
Using the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	464
Using This Publication.....	21
Using Winter Tires.....	456
Using Your Vehicle App and Charging.....	242

V

Vehicle Care.....	443
Cleaning the Exterior.....	443
Cleaning the Interior.....	445
Vehicle Charging Status - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	123
Vehicle Dimensions - Tourneo.....	438
Vehicle Dimensions - Transit.....	439
Vehicle Identification Number.....	477
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	477
Vehicle Identification Number Overview.....	477
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	477
Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate.....	477
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....	478
Vehicle Identification.....	477
Vehicle Identification Number.....	477
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	477
Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	185
How Does the Vehicle Power Down Timer Work.....	185
Overriding the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	185
Switching the Vehicle Power Down Timer On and Off.....	185
What Is the Vehicle Power Down Timer.....	185
Vehicle Range Display - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	118
Vehicle Software Updates.....	502
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Double Locking.....	502
Vehicle Software Updates - Vehicles With: Single Locking.....	502
Vehicle Specifications.....	436
Vehicle System Reset.....	505

Index

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	483
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....	483
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	482
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	483
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 12 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	143
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen, Vehicles Without: Air Conditioning.....	131
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Automatic Temperature Control.....	134
See: Climate Control - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Center Display Screen/Manual Temperature Control.....	139
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	467
Visual Search.....	32
Voice Interaction Examples.....	490
Voice Interaction.....	490

W

Warnings and Notes Used in This Publication.....	21
Washers.....	95
Adding Washer Fluid.....	97
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	96
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	96
Using the Windshield Washer.....	96
Washer Fluid Specification.....	97
Washer Precautions.....	95
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	91
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	447
Waypoints.....	500
Adding a Waypoint.....	500
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	119
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	119
What Is a Connected Vehicle - Battery Electric Vehicle.....	479

What Is a Connected Vehicle - Diesel/Gasoline.....	479
What Is Alexa Built-In.....	491
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	187
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	327
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	334
What Is Cruise Control.....	292
What Is Drive Mode Control.....	259
What Is Driver Alert.....	345
What Is eCall.....	63
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	275
What Is Keyless Entry.....	80
What Is Local Hazard Information.....	312
What Is One Pedal Drive.....	260
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	339
What Is Reverse Brake Assist.....	271
What Is Stability Control.....	278
What Is the 180 Degree Camera.....	291
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	148
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	212
What Is the Diesel Particulate Filter.....	202
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	267
What Is the Gasoline Particulate Filter.....	213
What Is the High Voltage Battery.....	215
What Is the Intelligent Speed Limiter.....	315
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	318
What Is the Pedestrian Alert System.....	62
What Is the Power Outlet.....	164
What Is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	159
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	287
What Is the Selective Catalytic Reduction System.....	205
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	467
What Is the Tire Sealant and Inflator Kit.....	463
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	167
What Is Traction Control.....	277
What Is Traffic Sign Recognition.....	348
What Is Voice Interaction.....	490
What Is Wrong Way Alert.....	351

Index

Wheel and Tire Information.....	451
Wheel Nuts.....	476
Wi-Fi	
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	482
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	480
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	482
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	482
Window Bounce-Back.....	111
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	111
Resetting Window Bounce-Back.....	111
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	111
Windows.....	109
Global Opening and Closing.....	110
Window Bounce-Back.....	111
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	98
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked Questions.....	98
Wipers and Washers.....	91
Autowipers.....	92
Reverse Wipe.....	94
Washers.....	95
Wipers.....	91
Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting.....	98
Wipers.....	91
Switching Windshield Wipers On and Off.....	91
Wiper Precautions.....	91
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions.....	167
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting.....	168
Wireless Accessory Charger – Information Messages.....	168
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	167
Wireless Accessory Charger – Troubleshooting.....	168
Wrong Way Alert Limitations.....	351
Wrong Way Alert Precautions.....	351
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	352
Wrong Way Alert – Information Messages.....	352
Wrong Way Alert.....	351
Wrong Way Alert – Troubleshooting.....	352

Y

Your Authorized Dealer.....	506
-----------------------------	-----

